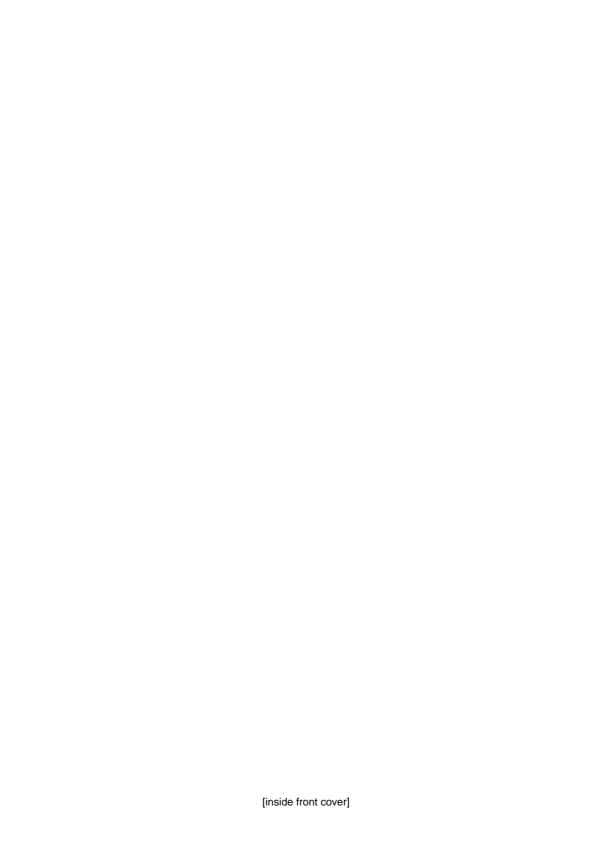
```
тэ, "ηνυθμικ,ολ.π"-ыацвозедчрфжтг

с._"нигомік;ολ.п"!ЫАЦВОЗЕДЧРФЖТГ
PCT NEAR AND A TOTAL SECULAR S
usu "aaqaqaqaga,7&q&o~10IHyAMKKOJIBIII
שנואק בי אפן מש"ב אפן בי אפן בי בי ששנואק בי אפין בי בי שנו אר
STAT HACOGVENITEORIFITENTAL' 'AL'
THE THE UTILITIES AND LACE THE PERFECTE
تَدْفُر چِدْهِخْسَدُرُ آفَ Tazqczeaxpф@TrB وَيَ
شَلْفُ تَجِدْهِخْنَ ۖ عَالِمَ YNZQCZEAXPФ@TrB مَا اللهُ
The grade "T. denuevoryinabeline and are deal
ټة (غي ځې څځ : ₹۲۵,0۱۴۳) څهنې څهنې څهنې څهنې څهنې څهنې څکې څ
چې (څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې څکې
rtgb qazwfreberfotgb menakanapunahu
re-99nujmit, olüpää 16-11%rmkvestenk
warequarks 1:4. OGSREEEEEEEEEEEEEEEE
. pa-ψαζ σξεδχρφωτγβώ» «мн (χ+) ~ m:
: q: | \Psi AZ ``\Sigma \Xi E \Delta X P \Phi \Omega T \Gamma B K K TO B A K TO B A
· + ), "ηνυθμικ, ολ. π - ыацвезедчрфжті
AG ... "HNYOMIK; OA · N · ! HALLBCBEZYPEXTI
ррсумыличення выправодинучици в предрагати в предостати в предрагати в предрагати
MURCOLINE COLUMNICA COLUMN
יNES (ב פרם דעששצואק ב אפרא בים מארסדעששצואק.
ימשת"פדץשאַצזאַקּ-פּ, פּפּפּס מדישאַנדיאַקּ-פּ.
פּ,לדּוַכימדונחת, פּ יִּטפּנּטונּפּקּ =יבּ<
3,049 ... 989 - 1469 .. THOTED 3777. D
asna Bacockskilkosifilkular, at.
STESTELLITEORICX SYDODER SERVE
تَدْفَر چ دَه فَسُسُرَ اقْدُ عُ ٢٨٤٩٥٥٤٥١٨٩ ق
تلف چلهض ۴۰ عق ATTB علا ۲۵ کا ۲۵
٠٤٨ عَرَمَ ٤ ٤٠٠٥ * أَلَقَ الْمِنْ عُنْكُمْ مُنْكُمْ دِوَا اللهُ الْمُعْلَمُ وَاللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ
TP 3 Vago . T. dri 20031110 Trnt Ebus
پطلعصکیمثوندغ ط۱۳۸۲۵۸۳۳۸۵۶ آهٔ ۱۳۸۴۴۰۰ و.
پظلعضکیمث مِنحف : که . [آهَ آهُ (۱۳۸۴–۱۰۰
F3C3búhNujmjó?Olpp: さて( ふ) ふるとき ~~
vtgbqazw[zebcrfbtgb ~2+pkn;p4ska#i
obaddismereache ederentages annenchaptak-
Je_-99nujmit, olüpää 1e-11krmndestk
restanting and I: 4 . 1 Case the property
named " of say amenty Rise " our for the
```

# TZOTZIL GRAMMAR





## TZOTZIL GRAMMAR

## SUMMER INSTITUTE OF LINGUISTICS PUBLICATIONS IN LINGUISTICS AND RELATED FIELDS

#### **PUBLICATION NUMBER 18**

#### **EDITOR**

Dow F. Robinson

#### EDITORIAL COMMITTEE

Kenneth L. Pike

Robert E. Longacre

Viola Waterhouse

#### EDITORIAL CONSULTANTS

Calvin Rensch, William Merrifield, Doris Bartholomew, Benjamin Elson

### TZOTZIL GRAMMAR

by

Marion M. Cowan

A Publication of the Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma

Norman

© Summer Institute of Linguistics 1969

julio, 1969

primera edición

Esta edición consta de 550 ejemplares

Derechos Reservados

por el

Instituto Lingüístico de Verano, A.C. Hidalgo 166, Tlalpan, México 22, D.F. Impreso en México Printed in Mexico 5.5 C 9-007

#### EDITOR'S NOTE

The present monograph, Tzotzil Grammar, is the second volume in this series which treats Mayan languages, re: Mayan Studies I, #5. In contrast to #5 which offered a collection of studies on various Mayan languages, i.e., Cakchiquel, Ixil, Jacaltec, etc., Tzotzil Grammar deals only with speech form currently in use by some 65,000 speakers in the area around Huixtan, Chiapas, Mexico. Miss Marion Cowan has had ten years experience among the Huixtecos; her fluency in the idiom as well as her linguistic field work, translation, and literacy efforts in the area, has given her materials that authentic ring of mature judgment. William E. Merrifield has taken the results of Miss Cowan's studies and cast them in a linguistic model which depends upon Pike's hierarchical structures and, as well, upon the stratificational model of Lamb. The linguistic strata represented in this volume reflect the model presented at S.I. L. courses, the University of Washington, Seattle, by Mr. Merrifield and others of his collegues.

Dow F. Robinson Tlalpan, Mexico June, 1968

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

|    |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | $\mathbf{P}_{i}$ | age        |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------------------|------------|
| 0. | FOREWORD  | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • |                  |            |
| 1. | INTRODUCTION  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 3          |
|    | The Tzotzil Language (1.1)  |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |                  | 3          |
|    | Illustrations (1.2)   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 4          |
|    | Acknowledgements (1.3)  |   | • | • |   | • |   | • |   |   |                  | 5          |
|    | Illustrations (1.2)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | •                | 6          |
| 2. | THE CLAUSE  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 9          |
|    | THE CLAUSE  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 9          |
|    | The Verb Phrase   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 10         |
|    | Verb Phrase Structure (2.2) .   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 10         |
|    | The Verb  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 10         |
|    | Mode (2.3)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 10         |
|    | Passive (2.4)   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |                  | 12         |
|    | Perfective (2.5)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 12         |
|    | Verb Stem (2.6)   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 12         |
|    | Perfective (2.5)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 14         |
|    | Reflexive $(2.7)$   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 14         |
|    | Reflexive (2.7) Pronouns and Plural (2.8) .   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 14         |
|    | Nonnuclear Constituents Aspect (2.9)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 14         |
|    | Aspect (2.9)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 14         |
|    | Auxiliary (2.10)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 15         |
|    | Directionals (2.11)   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 16         |
|    | Directionals (2.11) Nominal Positions (2.12)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 17         |
|    | Adverbial Positions   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 18         |
|    | Manner Position (2.13)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 18         |
|    | Locative Position (2.14)  |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 19         |
|    | Time Position (2.15)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 20         |
|    | Time Position (2.15) Conditional Position (2.16).   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 20         |
|    | Purpose-Cause Position (2.17)   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 21         |
|    | Vocative Position (2.18)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | •                | 22         |
| 3. | SUBSETS OF STATIVE CLAUSES  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 23         |
|    | Question Clauses (3.1)  |   |   |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 23         |
|    | Question Clauses (3.1)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | <b>2</b> 8 |
|    | Attention Clauses (3.3)  Manner Clauses (3.4)  Location Clauses (3.5)  Time Clauses (3.6) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 31         |
|    | Manner Clauses (3.4)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |                  | 32         |
|    | Location Clauses (3.5)  |   | • |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |                  | 33         |
|    | Time Clauses (3.6)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | • |   |   |                  | 34         |
|    | Concomitance Clauses (3, 7)   |   | _ | _ |   | _ | - | - |   |   |                  | 34         |

|    | Contingency Clauses (3.8)   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 35 |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|
|    | Contrary-to-fact Clauses (3.9)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 36 |
|    | Sensory Clauses (3.10)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 37 |
|    | Quantification Clauses (3, 11)  | Ī | Ī |   |   | Ī |   | 37 |
|    | Numaral Clauses (9 12)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 38 |
|    | Numerai Clauses (5.12)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 00 |
| 4. | . SUBSETS OF NON-STATIVE CLAUSES  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 43 |
|    | Description Clauses (4.1)   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 43 |
|    | Permission Clauses (4.2)  |   |   | - | _ |   | _ | 45 |
|    | Situation Clauses (4.2)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 46 |
|    | Situation Clauses (4.3)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 47 |
|    | Demonstration Clauses (4.4)   | • | • | • | • | • | • |    |
|    | Capability Clauses (4.5)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 48 |
|    | Aspectual Clauses (4.6)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 48 |
|    | Aspectual Clauses (4.6)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 49 |
| 5. | NOUNS AND NOUN PHRASES  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 53 |
| J. | Noun Classification   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 53 |
|    | Noun Classification   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 50 |
|    | Unpossessable Nouns (5.1)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 53 |
|    | Optionally Possessed Nouns (5.2)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 53 |
|    | Obligatorily Possessed Nouns (5.3)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 54 |
|    | Obligatorily Possessed Nouns (5.3) Classification of Nouns by Distribution (5.4). |   | • | • | • |   |   | 55 |
|    | Noun Phrase Structure   |   |   | • |   |   |   | 55 |
|    | Descriptive Noun Phrases (5.5)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 55 |
|    | Possessed Noun Phrases (5.6)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 57 |
|    | Subsets of Possessed Noun Phrases   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 59 |
|    | Associative Noun Phrases (5.7)  |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|    | Totality Noun Dhyagas (5.9)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 60 |
|    | Totality Noun Phrases (5.8)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 60 |
|    | Accompaniment Noun Phrases (5.9)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 00 |
|    | Causative Noun Phrases (5.10)   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 61 |
|    | Locative Noun Phrases (5.11)  | • | • | • |   | • | • | 61 |
|    | Temporal Noun Phrases (5.12)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 62 |
|    | Temporal Noun Phrases (5.12)  |   |   |   |   | • | • | 63 |
| _  |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 6. |   | • | • | • | • | • | • | 65 |
|    | Pronouns (6.1)  | • | • | • | • |   | • | 65 |
|    | Plural (6.2)  |   |   |   |   |   | • | 67 |
|    | Determiner Phrases (6.3)  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 70 |
|    | Determiner Phrases (6.3)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 71 |
| 7. | . RELATOR PHRASES   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 73 |
| 1. |   | • | • | • | • | • | • |    |
|    | $\underline{\text{ti-Phrases}}$ (7.1)   | ٠ | • | • | • | • | ٠ | 73 |
|    | <u> </u>  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 74 |
|    | $\underline{\mathbf{k'álal}}$ -Phrases (7.3)                                      |   | • | • | • | • | • | 74 |
|    | $\underline{\mathbf{mi}}$ -Phrases (7.4)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 76 |
| 8. | . MODALS  |   |   |   |   |   |   | 79 |
| ٠. | Present Continuative Phrases (8.1)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 79 |
|    |   | ٠ | • | • | • | • | • |    |
|    | Perfective Phrases (8.2)  | • | • | • | • | • | • | 80 |
|    | Past Perfective Phrases (8.3)   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 80 |

|     | TABLE                        | OF    | C    | ON   | TE. | NTS | 3 |   |   |   |   |   |   | ix         |
|-----|------------------------------|-------|------|------|-----|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------------|
|     | Conclusive Phrases (8.4) .   |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 80         |
|     | Limitative Phrases (8.5)     | •     |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 80         |
|     | Emphatic Phrases (8.6)       | •     |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 81         |
|     | Dubitative Phrases (8.7)     | •     |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 81         |
|     | Assertative Phrases (8.8) .  |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 81         |
|     |                              |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 8 <b>2</b> |
|     | Quotative Phrases (8.10) .   |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 8 <b>2</b> |
|     | Repetitive Phrases (8.11) .  |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 82         |
|     | Adjunctive Phrases (8.12) .  |       |      |      |     | •   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 8 <b>2</b> |
|     | Asseverative Phrases (8, 13) |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 83         |
|     | Speculative Phrases (8.14).  |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 8 <b>3</b> |
|     | Consequential Phrases (8.15) | •     | •    | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 83         |
| 9.  | APPOSITION                   |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 85         |
|     | Alternative Phrases (9.1) .  |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 85         |
|     |                              | •     |      | •    |     |     | • |   |   |   |   | • | • | 85         |
| 10. | WORD FORMATION               |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 8 <b>9</b> |
| 10. | Root Classification (10.1).  | •     |      | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 89         |
|     | Stem Classification (10.2).  |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   | : |   | ٠ | 92         |
|     | Formation of Compounds (10   | 3)    | •    | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • |   |   | • | 94         |
|     | Formation of Compound Rad    | icals | ! /1 | ∩ໍ 4 | a : | •   |   |   |   |   | • |   | • | 96         |
|     |                              | ·     |      |      |     |     |   |   | • |   |   | • | • | 97         |
|     | Intransitivizing Suffixes    | (10.  | 5)   | •    | •   | •   | • | • | : |   |   | • | • | 97         |
|     | Transitivizing Suffixes (    |       |      |      |     |     |   |   |   |   |   |   | • | 100        |
|     | Stativizing Suffixes (10.    | 7).   | ۰,   | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • | ٠ | 102        |
|     | Nominalizing Suffixes (1)    | ດິສາ  | •    | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • |   | 103        |
|     | Non-class-changing Affix     | vac ( | 10   | ó١   | •   | •   | : |   | • |   |   | • |   | 107        |
|     | Non-Class-Changing Airi      | CD (  | 10.  | . 0, | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 101        |
| 11. | MORPHOPHONEMICS              | •     | •    | •    | •   | •   | • | • | • | • | • | • | • | 111        |
| INI | DEX                          | •     |      |      |     | •   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 117        |



#### **FOREWORD**

Miss Cowan is a member of the Mexico Branch of the Summer Institute of Linguistics (SIL), Inc. The purposes of SIL are well known, but in general they are directed toward those languages of the world not yet reduced to writing. These languages are studied, speaking ability is acquired, alphabets are established, literacy materials are prepared, and so forth. In the course of such study, which presupposes linguistic training, information is acquired concerning the structure of these languages which is of general scientific interest.

In view of the vast numbers of languages which fall within the domain of SIL concern, the difficulty of training sufficient numbers of linguistic field workers can well be appreciated. The appearance of this study of Tzotzil would seem to give testimony to a degree of success in this regard, inasmuch as Miss Cowan may be considered a typical product of the SIL training program.

This training program consists of two summers of linguistic training at one or another of its Summer Institutes. The linguistic training is supplemented by a course to prepare the field worker for primitive (rural or jungle) living conditions. Such courses are held regularly in Mexico, West Africa, and New Guinea. The training then continues in the field through an organized consultant program and system of workshops.

Miss Cowan, a Registered Nurse, began her fieldwork in Mexico after receiving her SIL linguistic training. She has since served as a staff member in the Mexico jungle camp program as well as supporting staff in one of the Summer Institutes. Before settling among the Tzotzil of Huixtán, she did literacy work among the Chol, Tzeltal, and San Andres Tzotzil. In addition to her Huixteco assignment, she is presently a literacy consultant to her colleagues working in Mayan languages.

This study is based on her initial SIL linguistic training, her speaking ability of Tzotzil, and three SIL linguistic workshops. The first of these workshops was a part of the 1961 Linguistic Institute held on the campus of the University of Oklahoma. Dr. Viola Waterhouse was her consultant at that time. The other two workshops were held in 1966 and 1967 at the SIL Centro Linguistico Manuel Gamio in Ixmiquilpan, Mexico, where it was my privilege to direct her study.

Her grammar is framed in terms of a theory which recognizes language (and languages) as having three modes or components—as well as a means of relating the components to one another. Each component is constituted

of units which combine in restricted and hierarchical fashion. A description of one such component must inevitably include a classification of its units and a description of their patterned arrangements.

The components are conceived of as ordered in relation to one another, the syntactic component being intermediate to the other two. Two relations are thus required: that between the phonological and syntactic components, and one between the syntactic and semantic components.

The relation between units of adjacent components has been accounted for in two steps. Statements such as "A pronoun occupies Position One of the verb phrase nucleus if..." (6.1) serve to place units of one component (in this case the semantic component) 'in position' in the adjacent component; that is, they state the conditions under which such units are related to those of the adjacent component in particular positions within the set of patterned arrangements (or constructions) of the latter. A second set of statements such as "SUBJN is realized morphophonemically as the null element when..." (2.3) provide 'the spellings' for a unit of one component (in this case the syntactic component) in terms of the adjacent component.

Although framed in terms of a theory with formal and generative implications, this study of Tzotzil grammar is presented in straightforward prose (as indicated in the preceding paragraph) with a minimum of formal rules of the type so common in current studies. Miss Cowan has tried to write a grammar which someone might wish to sit down and read, a lamentably uncommon exercise even for linguists these days. An earlier and more formal statement of a portion of Tzotzil grammar using the same theoretical framework can be found in Cowan and Merrifield, 1968; and further discussion of the framework itself may be found in Merrifield, 1967.

For the most part, this study is limited to a description of the syntactic component of Tzotzil. In a few instances, however, reference is made to the semantic component and a few statements are made relating it to the syntactic component. A partial statement of the relation between the syntactic component and the phonological component is also attempted (11).

William R. Merrifield Coordinator of Linguistic Research in Mexico

Centro Lingüístico Manuel Gamio May 8, 1968

#### INTRODUCTION

1.1. The Tzotzil Language. According to McQuown (IJAL 22:191-5), the Tzotzil speak a lowland Maya language of the Tzeltalan sub-group. They live in the central mountainous region of the State of Chiapas, Mexico, and number about 65,000 speakers. There are seven main dialects of Tzotzil, all mutually intelligible to a high degree. This study is based on the eastern dialect which numbers about 8,000 speakers according to the official 1960 census. (The dialect is also referred to as Huixtec Tzotzil.)

Recent studies of Tzotzil include the following:

#### COWAN, Marion M.

- 1960 'The Translation of Questions into Huixteco," The Bible Translator 11:123-125.
- 1963 "Huixteco Translation Problems," The Bible Translator 14:90.
- 1965 "Exclusive-Inclusive in Huixteco Matthew," in John Beekman, Ed., Notes on Translation with Drills. Santa Ana: Summer Institute of Linguistics, pp. 169-173.
- 1966 "Differences of Points of View," in <u>Notes on Translation</u> 20:7-11.
  Santa Ana: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- 1966 'The Translation of Jew, the People, and Israel in the Book of Acts," in Notes on Translation 20:11-16. Santa Ana: Summer Institute of Linguistics.

#### COWAN, Marion M. and William R. MERRIFIELD

1968 "The Verb Phrase in Huixtec Tzotzil," Language 44:284-305.

#### DELGATY, Alfa.

1961 "Notes on Dependent Versus Independent Nouns in Tsotsil," in A William Cameron Townsend en el vigésimoquinto aniversario del Instituto Lingüístico de Verano. México, D. F., pp. 413-9.

#### DELGATY, Colin C.

1960 "Tzotzil Verb Phrase Structure," in <u>Mayan Studies I.</u> Norman, Okla: The Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma, pp. 81-125.

#### JACOBS, Kenneth and Robert F. LONGACRE

1967 "Patterns and Rules in Tzotzil Grammar," <u>Foundations of Language</u> 3:325-389.

#### SARLES, Harvey

1966 A Descriptive Grammar of the Tzotzil Language as Spoken in San Bartolomé de los Llanos, Chiapas, México. Unpublished University of Chicago Doctoral Dissertation.

#### WEATHERS, Nadine

- 1947 "Tsotsil Phonemes with Special Reference to Allophones of B," International Journal of American Linguistics 13:108-111.
- 1950 "Morphological Analysis of a Tzotzil (Mayan) Text," International Journal of American Linguistics 16:91-98.

A major hiatus in the study of Tzotzil is a more complete analysis of the phonology than is found in Weathers, 1947. In particular, study needs to be made of such 'higher-level' phonological units as word, phrase, and so forth. In the present study seventeen consonants and five vowels are recognized:

stops: b, p, p', t, t', k, k'. spirants: s, š, x. liquids: l, r. nasals: m, n. semivowels: v, y.

laryngeal: ?

vowels: a, e, i, o, u.

The affricates  $\underline{c}$ ,  $\underline{c'}$ ,  $\underline{c}$ , and  $\underline{c'}$  are treated here as sequences of  $\underline{t}$  or  $\underline{t'}$  and  $\underline{s}$  or  $\underline{s}$ . This treatment simplifies the statement of phonemic realization of morphophonemes, but I prefer to reserve judgment as to their phonemic status—as units or sequences—until a more complete phonological study can be made.

In addition, two levels of stress have been noted, word stress and phrase stress. Word stress is usually indicated by an acute accent ('), and phrase stress is left unmarked. In a few cases, however, where phrase stress is particularly relevant to a grammatical form, it is marked by an acute accent and the preceding word stress is indicated by a grave accent ('). Word stresses have their source in the lexicon, all roots being stressed. Phrase stress rests on the final syllable of a phrase, but needs to be studied further before more can be said about it.

1.2. Illustrations. Illustrative material is presented in various ways throughout this study. In some cases, superscript numerals are used to key Tzotzil forms to an English gloss; in others, the portion of a longer form which is in focus is set off by square brackets ([...]) both in the Tzotzil and the English. Particularly in the presentation of the verb phrase, where there is a great deal of diversification of representation of both morphemes and morphophonemes, an illustration includes several levels of abstraction. The following example is typical:

bát-SECOND-?ál-REF-IMPV-THIRD-PL 'go tell them,' bá-\$\varphi\_-?ál-be-o-\varphi\_- ik, bá?álbe\varphik, bá ?álbeik.

The first form above is a string of Tzotzil MORPHEMES. Morphemes are indicated by full caps, with the exception of roots, which are spelt out morphophonemically. The second Tzotzil form is a string of morphophonemes. The hyphens serve only to aid the reader in identifying the relation between particular morphemes and particular strings of morphophonemes. The final two forms are phonemic; the first includes one symbol for each morphophoneme of the preceding form so that the reader may see the relation of morphophonemes to phonemes. The second includes only non-null elements. If none of the morphophonemes are realized phonemically as the null element, only one form composed of phonemes is given, as in the following example:

INCOMPL-k'ót-váy-SUBJN-SECOND 'you will arrive there to sleep', tš-k'ó-váy-\$\mathcal{g}\$-an, tšk'ó váyan.

Parentheses are used in glossing a Tzotzil form either to add an Fnglish particle required to make the English idiomatic, or to delete a word which would hinder an idiomatic interpretation.

1.3. Acknowledgments. Nadine Weathers introduced me first to the Tzotzil language. Her initial instruction, and later counsel, have been of much benefit in learning and analyzing Tzotzil.

The data for this study were collected during extensive field trips in the municípios of San Andrés Larrainzar and Huixtán, Chiapas, México, from 1953-1967. The study of the Huixtán dialect was begun in 1958. Nicolás Hernández Ton (c. 32 years of age), Martín Pérez Ara (c. 55), Miguel Martínez Vásquez (c. 38), and Pedro Pérez Gómez (c. 28), all of the paraje of Yolon Basom, have, with much patience and faithful criticism, taught me to speak their language.

The present study is based on an unpublished manuscript "Morphological and Syntactic Structure of Tzotzil, San Andrés Dialect," written in 1957, at which time I received helpful suggestions from Prof. Howard Law. A later study, "Grammar of Tzotzil of Huixtán", (also unpublished) was written in 1961 at the Summer Institute of Linguistics of the University of Oklahoma, under the direction of Dr. Viola Waterhouse. The present study builds on these two, and was undertaken at two four-month seminars of the Summer Institute of Linguistics held in the fall of 1966 and 1967 at its Centro Linguistico Manuel Gamio, Ixmiquilpan, Hidalgo, México. A more formal presentation of the verb phrase than presented here, Cowan and Merrifield (1968), was prepared at the 1966 Seminar. I am indebted to Dr. William R. Merrifield for his direction during these workshops. He has given substantial help in the analysis and presentation of the material.

Of inestimable assistance in the analysis was a Huixtec Tzotzil concordance based on a 45,914-morpheme text compilation, and produced by the Linguistic Information Retrieval Project of the Summer Institute of Linguistics and the University of Oklahoma Research Institute, which is sponsored by Grant GS-934 of the National Science Foundation. Illustrative material drawn from the concordance is identified by the text and sentence number assigned by the concordance program.

1.4. Bibliographical References. In addition to the articles mentioned above, the following texts and grammatical descriptions of related and unrelated languages have been helpful to me in preparing this study. I also list four Doctoral Dissertations (three below, and one above) from the Universities of Chicago and California (at Berkeley) which are relevant to this study, but which I have not been able to consult.

BAER, Phillip and William R. MERRIFIELD

1967 "Restatement of the Pronominal Series in Maya (Lacandon)," <u>International Journal of American Linguistics</u> 33:206-208.

DAW, Christopher C.

1967 The <u>Jacaltec Language</u>. Unpublished University of Chicago Doctoral Dissertation.

GRIMES, Joseph E.

1964 Huichol Syntax. The Hague: Mouton and Company.

HOCKETT, Charles F.

1958 A Course in Modern Linguistics. New York: The Macmillan Company.

HOPKINS, Nicholas A.

1967 The Chuj Language. Unpublished University of Chicago Doctoral Dissertation.

KAUFMAN, Terrance S.

1958 <u>Tzeltal Grammar</u>. Unpublished University of California Doctoral Dissertation.

LONGACRE, Robert E.

1964 Grammar Discovery Procedures. The Hague: Mouton and Company.

MAYERS, Marvin K. (Ed.)

1966 Languages of Guatemala. The Hague: Mouton and Company.

MERRIFIELD, William R.

1967 "On the Form of Rules in a Generative Grammar," Monograph
Series on Languages and Linguistics 20, ed. by Edward L. Blansitt, Jr. Washington: Georgetown University Press. Pp. 43-55.

1968 <u>Palantla Chinantec Grammar</u>, in Papeles de la Chinantla, Serie Científica, Mexico City: Museo Nacional (in press).

MERRIFIELD, William R. and Betty J. STOUDT

1967 "Molinos Mixtec Clause Structure." Linguistics 32:58-78.

SLOCUM, Marianna C.

1948 'Tzeltal (Mayan) Noun and Verb Morphology, " International Journal of American Linguistics 14:77-86.

n.d. "Tzeltal (Mayan) II: Sentence Types," ms.

WARKENTIN, Viola and Arabelle WHITTAKER

n.d. "Tumbala Chol Clause Structure," Linguistics (in press).

#### THE CLAUSE

2.1. Clause Structure. The clause is a unit of predication. It consists minimally of a PREDICATE to which NOMINAL and ADVERBIAL constituents may be added. Nominal constituents are in cross-reference with the Predicate and are, together with the Predicate, considered NUCLFAR. Adverbial constituents are NONNUCLEAR.

A clause may have as many as four nuclear constituents as well as non-nuclear ones. The nuclear constituents (in normal order) are: PREDICATE, OBJECT, INDIRECT OBJECT, and SUBJECT.

The predicate constituent of a verbal clause may be INTRANSITIVE, TRANSITIVE, or DITRANSITIVE; and is in cross-reference with the other nuclear constituents of the clause. The degree of transitivity of a clause is that of its Predicate. Thus an intransitive clause has an intransitive predicate, and so forth. The Indirect Object position may be occupied only in a ditransitive clause, and the Direct Object position may be occupied only in a transitive or ditransitive clause. The Subject position may be occupied in a clause of any degree of transitivity.

A clause may be ACTIVF or PASSIVE. In Active (a) clauses, the subject is the agent, the object is the goal, and the indirect object is the indirect goal. When Passive (p), the subject of an intransitive (i) or transitive (t) clause is the goal, and the subject of a ditransitive (d) clause is the indirect goal. In a passive intransitive clause there is only a subject (viz. the goal), and no agent may be marked. In passive transitive and ditransitive clauses the agent may be marked by the use of an associative noun phrase, and may be considered to fill the object and indirect object positions, respectively, whose normal occupants have vacated to subject position. (Some may prefer to consider these positions 'Agent' position; but regardless of the name, the nominal positions are the same in number for both passive and active clauses of the same degree of transitivity.) Since the agent of a passive clause is uniquely marked as an associative noun phrase, its linear order is not as rigidly fixed as other nominals.

- ai: 1 ináki 2 tig v inik4 e. '2 The 3 man 4 (remote) 1 sat down.'
- pi: 1nákal 2ti3vínik4e. 12The 3man 4(remote) is seated. 1
- at: 112 2 snakan 3 ti4 vinik 5 e 6 ti7 xpétul e. '6 (The) 7 Peter 8 (remote) 1, 2 seated 3 the 4 man 5 (remote).'
- pt: 1 inákanat 2 ti3 v í nik4e 5 yú 2 un 6 ti 7 x pétul6e. 12 The 3 man 4 (remote) 1 was seated 5 by 6 the) 7 Peter 8 (remote).'
- ad: 11ax 2yak'be 3? Isim 4ti5vinik6e 7ti 8xpétul6e. '7(The) 8Peter 9(remote)
  1.2gave 4the 5man 6(remote) 3corn.'

pd: 1 2 4k'bat 2 fsim 3ti4 vinik 5e 8 yú 2un 7 ti8 xpétul 8e. 3 The 4 man 5 (remote) 1 was given 2 corn 8 by 7 (the) 8 Peter 8 (remote).

Nonnuclear constituents are MANNER, LOCATIVE, TIME, CONDITION, PURPOSE-CAUSE, and VOCATIVE. The normal order of nonnuclear constituents in relation to one another and to the nuclear constituents is:

PRED, Ma, NOM, Loc, Time, Cond, P-C, Voc

More than three nonnuclear constituents rarely occur in the same clause.

1tšaxtóxbot 217 3ti4 tšánib 57úgi. '1I will pay it to you 2here 3in 4four 5months 6(immediate).' (NM616)

12álbun 2tálel 3mi4lék. '1Tell me 2coming 3if 4it is good (i.e., Tell me (by letter) if it is O.K.)' (NM289)

1xámal<sub>2</sub>me 3tšaválbun 4yú <sup>2</sup>un 5xétš 6tixtóx 7kó <sup>2</sup>nton. '<sub>1</sub>It is open 2(emphatic) 3you will tell it to me 4so that 5it is thus 6I will pay 7my heart (i.e., Tell me plainly so that thus I will be satisfied).' (NM618)

#### 2.2-2.11 The Verb Phrase

The predicate position of a clause is occupied by a verb phrase. The verb phrase is discussed in detail in the following sections; this is followed by a brief discussion of the forms which occupy Nominal and Adverbial Positions of the Clause.

2.2. Verb Phrase Structure. The constituents of the verb phrase are ASPECT, AUXILIARY, NUCLEUS, and DIRECTIONAL. The nucleus of the verb phrase consists of PRONOUNS, PLURAL markers, REFLEXIVE, and VERB. The verb consists of a VERB STEM which may be inflected for PERFECTIVE, REFERENTIAL, PASSIVE, or MODE.

VP = (ASP) (AUX) NUC (DIR)  $NUC = (PN^1) (PN^2) V (REFL) (PL^2) (PN^3) (PL^1)$ V = VS (PERF) (REF) (PASS) (MODE)

The following description will focus first on the verb, then on the remainder of the nucleus, and finally on the nonnuclear constituents of the phrase.

#### 2,3-2,6 The Verb

2.3. Mode. There are two modes: INDICATIVE and INJUNCTIVE, and

two morphemes of mode: IMPERATIVE (IMPV) and SUBJUNCTIVE (SUBJN). Injunctive mode is related to morphemes in the following complex way:

- (1) When an injunctive clause is the subject of a negative clause, the negative verb  $\underline{m}\underline{u}$  is modified by the modal  $\underline{m}\underline{e}$  and the Verb Phrase of the injunctive clause is timeless (<u>TLESS</u>).
- mú-me-TLESS-THIRD-SECOND-pás-THIRD 'don't do it,' mú-me-š-Ø-av-pás-Ø, múmešappás, múme šapás.
  mú-me-TLESS-THIRD-bát 'he is not to go,' mú-me-š-Ø-bát, múme šbát.
- (2) Otherwise, when the injunctive clause is a stative or has an inclusive person subject, its verb is subjunctive.
- lék-PERF-PASS-SUBJN-THIRD 'may it be good,' lék-Ø-Ø-uk-Ø, lékuk, kól-PERF-PASS-SUBJN-FIRST 'may I have been freed,' kól-em-Ø-uk-un, kólemukun.

  INCL-pás-SUBJN-THIRD-PL. 'let's do it 'k-pás-Ø-Ø-tik vpástik

INCL-pas-SUBJN-THIRD-PL 'let's do it,' k-pas-\$\mathcal{\theta}-\mathcal{\theta}-tik, \ \frac{xpastik}{2\text{abtex-SUBJN-PL}} \ 'let's work,' \ \mathcal{\theta}-\frac{2}{abtex-\mathcal{\theta}-ukutik}, \ \ \frac{2}{abtexukutik}.

- (3) Otherwise, the injunctive clause has a second person subject and its verb is imperative.
- SECOND-mil-REF-IMPV-THIRD 'kill it for him,' \$\mathscr{g}\$-mil-be-o-\$\varrho\$, milb\$\varrho\$, milb\$\varrho\$, k\varrhom-IMPV-SECOND 'stay', k\varrhom-o-an, k\varrhoman.

When a verb is either imperative or subjunctive, a pronoun occurs in position three, but none occurs in position one. <u>SUBJN</u> is realized morphophonemically as the null element when flanked by an intransitive verb stem and <u>SECOND</u>, or with an active nonperfective transitive verb stem. Otherwise, it is realized as <u>uk</u>. <u>IMPV</u> is realized as <u>o</u>.

COMPL-tál-vé?-SUBJN-SECOND 'you came and ate,' \$\beta\_{\text{tál-vé?-\$\beta\_{\text{an}}}}\$
tál vé?an.

mú-TLESS-THIRD-SECOND-?ák'-THIRD 'you don't give it,' mú-š-\$-av-?ák'-Ø, múšavØák', mú šavák'.

mű-vé?-PERF-PASS-SUBJN-FIRST 'I have not eaten, ' mű-vé?-em-g-ukun, mű vé?emukun.

?6y-PERF-PASS-SUBJN-THIRD 'may there be,' ?6y-Ø-Ø-uk-Ø, ?6yuk. SECOND-k'él-IMPV-THIRD 'look at it,' Ø-k'él-o-Ø, k'élo. yál-IMPV-SECOND 'descend', yál-o-an, yál@an, yálan.

Indicative clauses never have imperative verbs, but do have subjunctive verbs in a few specifiable cases. These are specified elsewhere in this study; but for purposes of illustration, two cases are cited here; viz., the verb of an indicative clause is subjunctive if either (1) an auxiliary verb is present, or (2) the verb is perfective and the clause occupies the subject of a negation clause.

INCOMPL-k'ót-?ábtex-SUBJN-FIRST 'I shall arrive and work, ' tš-k'ó-?ábtex-uk-un, tšk'ó ?ábtexukun. mű-FIRST-t'šám-PERF-REF-SUBJN-THIRD 'I have not received it for him, ' mű-k-t'šám-ox-be-uk-Ø, műxt'šámoxbøuk, műx t'šámoxbuk.

2.4. Passive. A clause is ACTIVE if its agent is its subject; it is PASSIVE if its goal is its subject. The verb of a passive clause has as part of its realization the morpheme <u>PASS</u>. There is no overt morpheme to indicate a verb is active.

<u>PASS</u> is realized morphophonemically as the null element when following a stative verb stem, as  $\underline{at}$  when following a nonperfective transitive verb stem, and as  $\underline{Rl}$  when following a perfective transitive verb stem.

mól-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I am old, ' mól-Ø-Ø-un, mólun.

COMPL-FIRST-máx-PASS 'I was hit, ' n-i-máx-at, nimáxat.

tšáp-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I am prepared, ' tšáp-Ø-Rl-un, tšápalun.

2.5. Perfective. An indicative verb phrase is TIMELESS, INCOMPLE-TIVE, COMPLETIVE, or PERFECTIVE. Of these four aspects, the first three relate to the morpheme class ASP. Since ASP is nonnuclear, it is discussed further below (2.9). Perfective aspect relates to PERF, which is realized morphophonemically as the null element in the presence of PASS, and otherwise as em after an intransitive verb stem, and as ox after a transitive verb stem. As in the case of SUBJN and IMPV mentioned above, when PERF is present, a pronoun must occur in position three but may not occur in position one.

nák-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I am seated, ' nák-Ø-Rl-un, nákalun. vé?-PERF-FIRST 'I have eaten, ' vé?-em-un, vé?emun. THIRD-tšón-PERF-THIRD 'he has sold it, ' y-tšón-ox-Ø, stšónox.

2.6. Verb Stem. In the verb phrase, a pronoun may stand in any of three relations to the verb: agent, goal, or referent. The first two of these relations are semantic primitives; the last is not. The last may be either the indirect goal or the possessor of the (direct) goal, with the restriction that it not also be the agent.

11ax 2 atak be 3 antt'son. '1, 2 You sent 3 your son 3 [to him].'
11ax 2 atak [be] 3 svakas. '1, 2 You enclosed 3 [his] cattle.'

An active intransitive clause is based on intransitive verb stems.

<u>INCOMPL-SECOND-?átin</u> 'you will bathe,' <u>tš-a-?átin</u>, <u>tša?átin</u>, <u>COMPL-FIRST-náki</u> 'I sat down,' <u>n-i-náki</u>, <u>nináki</u>.

An intransitive clause which is perfective and passive is a STATIVE clause. A stative clause is based on perfective passive transitive verb stems, or on stative verb stems (stative stems and noun stems) which behave syntactically like perfective passive transitive stems, and are therefore considered always to occur with the morphemes <u>PERF</u> and <u>PASS</u> when in the nucleus of a verb phrase.

xóm-PERF-PASS-THIRD, 'it is perforated, 'xóm-Ø-Rl-Ø, xómol. tšáp-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I am prepared, 'tšáp-Ø-Rl-un, tšápalun.

A transitive clause is based on a transitive verb stem.

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-?ák'-THIRD 'I'll give it, ' tš-\$\mathreal{\ell} -k-\frac{2}{a}k'-\mathreal{\ell}\$, \text{tšk}\mathreal{\ell}\frac{6}{a}k'. \text{tšk}\mathreal{\ell}\frac{6}{a}k'. \text{tšk}\mathreal{\ell}\frac{6}{a}k'-\mathreal{\ell}\frac{6}{a}

If a transitive clause is both perfective and passive, its verb is referential (i.e., inflected as though there were a referent). REF is realized morphophonemically as be.

xám-PERF-REF-PASS-THIRD 'it has been opened,' xám-\$\vartheta\_be-Rl-\$\vartheta\_s\$, xámb\$\vartheta\_il. pás-PERF-REF-PASS-THIRD 'it has been made,' pás-\$\vartheta\_be-Rl-\$\vartheta\_s\$, pásb\$\vartheta\_il. pásbil.

A referential clause has a transitive verb stem and REF. Since a transitive clause that is both perfective and passive requires  $\overline{REF}$ , a referential clause may not be both perfective and passive.

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-?ál-REF-THIRD 'I shall tell it to him, ' tš-\$\mathcal{g}\$-k-\frac{2al-be-\vartheta}{2}, t\text{t\text{sk\vartheta}albe}, t\text{sk\vartheta}albe}.

INCOMPL-FIRST-THIRD-xák'-REF-FIRST 'he will ask it of me, 'tš-i-y-xák'-be-un, tšisxák'bun, tšisxák'bun.

#### 2.7-2.8 Remainder of the Nucleus

- 2.7. Reflexive. A clause is REFLEXIVE if the same referent is both its agent and its goal. This is marked grammatically by the occurrence of REFL which consists of a pronoun of position two and the reflexive noun ba.
- INCOMPL-FIRST-tšón-FIRST-bá 'I'll hire myself out,' tš-k-tšón-k-bá, tixtšón xbá.

  INCOMPL-THIRD-míl-THIRD-bá 'he'll kill himself,' tš-y-míl-y-bá, tsmíl sbá.
- 2.8. Pronouns and Plural. There are four personal pronouns, and three positions which they occupy in the verb phrase nucleus. The Plural morpheme may occupy one of two positions. These are described in 6.1 and 6.2.

#### 2.9-2.11 Nonnuclear Constituents

2.9. Aspect. There are four aspects in Huixtec: TIMELESS, INCOM-PLETIVE, COMPLETIVE, and PERFECTIVE. Perfective aspect has been discussed above. The remaining three aspects are members of the class ASP: TLESS (timeless), INCOMPL (Incompletive) and COMPL (completive). TLESS is realized morphophonemically as § and INCOMPL as §.

TLESS-THIRD-FIRST-?óxtikin-THIRD 'I know him, ' <u>š-\$\vartheta\_k\$-\vart</u>

<u>COMPL</u> is realized morphophonemically as  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  when the clause is the subject of a negation clause, and otherwise as  $\underline{\underline{n}}$  preceding <u>FIRST</u>, <u>SECOND</u>, or <u>INCL</u>, as  $\underline{\underline{i}}$  preceding <u>THIRD</u>, and as the null element preceding <u>AUX</u>.

mú-SUBJN-COMPL-FIRST-tál 'I didn't come,' mú-uk-š-i-tál, múøkšitál, múk šitál.

COMPL-FIRST-?án 'I was born, ' n-i-?án, ni?án.

COMPL-SECOND-?átin 'you bathed,' n-a-?átin, na?átin.

COMPL-INCL-yál-ukutik 'we (incl) descended, 'n-ix-yál-ukutik, nixyálukutik.

COMPL-THIRD-t'say 'he got lost,' i-Ø-t'say, it'say.

COMPL-tal-THIRD-?ik'-SUBJN-THIRD 'he came and took her,' Ø-tal-y-?ik'-Ø-Ø, tal yik'.

2.10. Auxiliary. AUX is a subclass of intransitive verb stems which may modify a nuclear verb. There are eight auxiliaries: tâl 'come', bât 'go', 2ây 'go and return', xûl 'arrive home', k'ôt 'arrive away from home', lik 'begin', lâx 'finish', and ?êt'š 'pass by'.

Auxiliaries differ from directionals (below) in not being in simultaneous temporal order with the nuclear verb. There is a syntactic limitation that an auxiliary may not occur with a perfective nuclear verb. As mentioned above, the nuclear verb of an indicative clause is subjunctive when an auxiliary is present.

INCOMPL-láx-?ábtex-SUBJN-FIRST 'I shall finish working,' <u>tš-láx-</u>?ábtex-uk-un, tšláx ?ábtexukun.

COMPL-xûl-?ák'-REF-PASS-SUBJN-FIRST 'I arrived home and was given it,' Ø-xûl-?ák'-be-at-uk-un, xûl?ák'bøatukun, xûl ?ák'batukun.

Three of the auxiliary stems have special morphophonemic realization when modifying a nuclear verb: bat becomes ba, 2ay becomes 2a, k'ot becomes k'o. A fourth, tal, has a special realization 1a? when followed by IMPV, either as auxiliary or nuclear verb.

COMPL-?4y-THIRD-k'él-SUBJN-THIRD 'He went there and saw it and returned, ' \$\mathcal{p}-\frac{2a}{2}-y-k'\ell-\$\mathcal{\rho}-\beta, \frac{2a}{3} \text{ sk'\ell}.

INCOMPL-k'ót-váy-SUBJN-SECOND 'you will arrive there to sleep, 'tš-k'ó-váy-\$\mathcal{g}\$-an, tšk'ó váyan.

If the nuclear verb is imperative, of the auxiliaries only <u>tal</u> 'come' or <u>bat</u> 'go' may occur.

tál-SECOND-pás-IMPV-THIRD 'come do it,' lá?-\$\mathreal{\theta}-\mathreal{\theta}-\mathreal{\theta}, \frac{1\text{1\text{2}} - \mathreal{\theta}}{2\text{1}} \frac{1\text{2}}{2\text{2}} \frac{1\text{2

The following forms which appear to include an injunctive auxiliary and an indicative main verb are treated as two successive verb phrases each.

114 2xpétot. '1Come, 2let me pick you up.'
114 2 76tšukutik. '1Come, 2let's enter.'

2.11. Directionals. A directional event is an intransitive event which modifies a nuclear event and is in simultaneous temporal order with it.

The DIRECTIONAL constituent of the verb phrase consists of one or two DIRECTIONAL NOUNS. A directional noun is either a double-function root (10.1) which functions both as an intransitive verb stem and directional noun without derivational affixation, or an intransitive verb stem with nominalizing suffix el (10.8).

Directional nouns fall into two sets on the basis of their position when two nouns occur together. The classification is tentative and subject to further investigation.

$$DIR = (Dir^1) (Dir^2)$$

Nouns which may occupy <u>Dir</u> are: <u>yalel</u> 'descending', <u>muel</u> 'ascending', <u>sutel</u> 'returning', <u>kómel</u> 'remaining', <u>xulel</u> 'arriving home', <u>k'ótel</u> 'arriving away from home', <u>lók'el</u> 'exiting', <u>?ótšel</u> 'entering', <u>?ét'šel</u> 'passing by'.

112 2 sténik 3 26tšel 4ti 5náb. 1,2 They threw him 3 entering 4 into 5 deep water. (DB010)

Nouns which may occupy both  $\underline{Dir}^1$  and  $\underline{Dir}^2$  are:  $\underline{tal}$  'coming', and  $\underline{batel}$  'going'.

tkit'stik2sa 3lok'el 4tal. '1Let's bring it 2now 3exiting 4coming (i.e., Let's bring it out here now).' (PP062)
11a 2skuts 3muel 4batel. '1 2He carried it 3up 4going.'

When  $\underline{tal}$  occupies the  $\underline{Dir}^1$  position, it may or may not occur with derivational affixation.

1k'úsi 2 26ra 3 tšasút 4tál. '1What 2time 3will you return 4coming (i.e., When will you return here)?' (NL109)

1xets 2yu un 3nixkol 4talel. 2Because of this, 1it is thus 3we were freed 4coming (i.e., For that reason we were freed to come). (PP121)

Three nouns may occupy <u>Dir</u> without derivational affixation: <u>yal</u> 'descending', <u>sút</u> 'returning', and <u>lók'</u> 'exiting'. They are always followed by tál.

- 1tštál 2snít 3yál 4tál 5ti6smé? e. '¡Coming 2they pull 3down 4coming 5(the) 6their mother 7(remote) (i.e., They come and pull their mother down to where they are).' (DB029)
- 1tšatákbun 2sút 3tál 4sk'éšol. '1You will send to me 2returning 3coming 4its answer (i.e., You will send back here to me the answer).' (NL053)
- 1 itšá?kuši 2 lók' 3 tál. '1 He came to life again 2 exiting 3 coming (i.e., He came to life again and came out of the grave).' (X2. 116)

#### 2.12 Nominal Positions

The Nominal Positions of most clauses may be occupied by a clause, a noun phrase, or any form which may occupy a noun phrase position. Restricted subsets of clauses may also have prepositional phrases as nominals. Words that may occupy these positions include possessed and unpossessed nouns and various classes of statives.

 $_{1}$ <u>yáxem</u> [ $_{2}$ <u>sxól</u>]. '[ $_{2}$ His head]  $_{1}$ has been wounded.' (MC025)  $_{1}$ <u>lá</u>  $_{2}$ <u>xpás</u> [ $_{3}$ <u>póš</u>]. ' $_{1,2}$ I made [ $_{3}$ liquor].' (F2.132)  $_{1}$ <u>láx</u>  $_{2}$ <u>avák'bun</u> [ $_{3}$ <u>xmíl</u>]. ' $_{1,2}$ You gave me [ $_{3}$ a thousand].'

Phrases which may occupy nominal positions include Determined Noun Phrases, Descriptive Noun Phrases, Possessed Noun Phrases, <u>ti</u>-Phrases, and Conditional Phrases.

- 1tškák'be [2ti3spóšil4e]. '1I will give him [2(the) 3his medicine 4(remote)]. '(NM430)
- \[
  \frac{1\text{t\frac{a}kbun}}{2\text{t\frac{a}lel}} \left[ \frac{3\text{y\frac{a}n}}{4\text{t\frac{a}lel}} \right]. \quad \frac{1}{1}\text{Send me} \quad \text{2coming} \left[ \frac{3}{2}\text{money} \right]. \quad \text{(NM385)} \\
  \frac{1\text{t\text{t\text{t\frac{a}sbat}}}{2\text{s\text{b\text{d}b\text{d}leg}} \right] \quad \text{t\text{t\text{t}}} \text{it was broken} \left[ \frac{3}{2}\text{s\text{bolom}} \right] \quad \text{t\text{l}} \text{t\text{t\text{t}}} \text{s\text{t\text{t\text{t\text{s}}}} \text{p\text{was broken}} \right] \quad \text{t\text{t\text{t\text{t\text{s}}}} \text{p\text{was broken}} \right]. \quad \quad \text{t\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{t\text{d}t\text{s\text{s\text{d}t\text{s\text{s\text{d}t\text{s\text{s\text{s\text{s
- 1md [2ti3svéntauk 4stůkik]. 'It is not [20n 3their account 4they alone] (i.e., It is not on their account alone).' (X1.098)
- 1md 2 má? 3uk [4mi5tš?ábtex]. '1It is not 2I know 3also [4if 5he works] (i.e., Neither do I know if he is working). ' (NM065)

A significant limitation in what may occupy a nominal position is that the agent of a passive clause may only be a possessed noun phrase based on the associative stem  $\underline{19un}$ .

 $_{1}\underline{\text{mú}}$   $_{2}\underline{\text{lékuk}}$   $_{3}\underline{\text{i'flat}}$   $[_{4}\underline{\text{yú'un}}$   $_{5}\underline{\text{ti}}_{6}\underline{\text{sbánkil}}_{7}\underline{\text{e}}]$ .  $_{1}\underline{\text{It}}$  is not  $_{2}\underline{\text{it}}$  be good  $_{3}\underline{\text{he}}$  was seen  $[_{4}\underline{\text{by}}_{5}(\underline{\text{the}})$   $_{6}\underline{\text{his}}$  older brother  $_{7}(\underline{\text{remote}})]$  (i. e. , He was not liked by his older brother).  $_{1}\underline{\text{remote}}$  (AJ005)

Various subsets of clauses have been defined below on the basis of the kinds of clauses which may occupy their nominal positions. The following examples illustrate a clause in subject position and in object position, respectively.

- <sup>1</sup>xá? <sup>2</sup>lék [<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>ák'o <sup>4</sup>sútuk <sup>5</sup>sták'in]. '<sub>1</sub>That is it: <sup>2</sup>it is good [<sup>3</sup>let it <sup>4</sup>it be returned <sup>5</sup>his money] (i.e., It's best that his money be returned). '(NM052)
- 1mu 2ma?tik [3mi4tšixtšápax]. '1It is not 2we know [3if 4we'll be arranged] (i. e., We don't know if it will be settled for us).' (PP171)

The forms which occupy nominal positions are diagnostic of clause subsets, and further description of their distribution is given in chapters 3 and 4, where subsets of clauses are introduced and illustrated.

#### 2.13-2.18 Adverbial Positions

2.13. The Manner Position. The Manner constituent gives information regarding such notions as mode, degree, means, material, and instrument. It normally occurs immediately following the predicator, and may be a stative verb or a <u>ti</u>-phrase.

```
118 2xpas [3ti4?anil]. '1,2 I did it [3in 4a hurry].' (NM548)
11811k 2kalbot [3k'unk'un]. '1 will begin 2 to tell it to you [3slowly] (i.e., I will gradually begin to tell it to you).' (AB041)
11811 3to 38toxob 4ku?un [5lek] 6ti7xun3e. '1 It is not 2 still 3 it becomes straight
```

1mú2to 3štóxob 4kú ?un [51ek] 6ti7xún8e. '1It is not 2still 3it becomes straight 4by me [5well] 6the 7paper 8 (remote) (i.e., I don't know how to read and write well yet).' (MS085)

itixpastik [2tsots]. 'iWe will do it [2hard] (i.e., We will persevere).'
(F2.195)

 $\frac{1 \pm 3 \text{ kul}}{1 \pm 3 \text{ karena } 4 \pm 3 \text{ kin}}. \quad \text{'}_{1}\text{He is tied } \text{[}_{2}\text{with (a) }_{4}\text{metal }_{3}\text{chain}\text{]}. \quad \text{'}_{1}\text{He is tied } \text{[}_{2}\text{with (a) }_{4}\text{metal }_{3}\text{chain}\text{]}. \quad \text{'}_{1}\text{I have been made } \text{[}_{2}\text{of }_{3}\text{dust}\text{]}. \quad \text{'}_{1}\text{MP023})$ 

The base of several idiomatic expressions is a  $\underline{ti}$ -phrase in the manner position.

- 1ik'ot [2ti3pasel]. 'It arrived [2by 3being done] (i.e., It took place, it happened).' (F2.202)
- 1lax 2yak' [sti4k'elel]. 1,2He gave it [sby 4being looked at] (i.e., He showed it).
- 1tšispāsum [2ti3mantal]. '1He does me [2by 3a command] (i.e., He commands me).' (F2.094)
- 2.14. The Locative Position. The Locative constituent of a clause occurs most frequently following the predicate, but may also occur following the nominals. If both Locative and Time constituents occur, Locative precedes Time.

PL: tštún [2117, to]. 'It is useful [2here 3still).' (NM542)

PL: tšit'stbax [tiskastīya]. 'I will write [tin Spanish].' (CL078)

POL: 1tšbá 2stší?in 3xpétul [4ti5xtéklum]. '1Going 2he will accompany 3Peter [4to 5town] (i.e., He will go and accompany Peter to town.'

PSLT: 1?ép 2tigpúkux [411?] 5tigvó?one. '1Many 2the 3devils [4here] 5in 6the past (i. e., There were many devils here in the past).' (DB032)

A Locative constituent may be a word, a phrase, a question clause based on  $\underline{ba}$  'where', or a clause based on  $\underline{ya}$  whose subject is a  $\underline{ba}$  clause. Words which may occupy this position include only locative statives.

- 12ák'o 2táluk [31724to]. '1Let it 2may he come [3here 4still] (i.e., Let him come here).' (AJ041)
- 126y 2k'úsi 3láx 4yíl 5ti6lóktor [7te]. '1There is 2what 5the 6doctor 3,4saw [7there] (i. e., The doctor saw something there).' (NM513)
- 1 ibat 2 y 6 ? [3 b 1 4 pinka 5 ? uk 6 e]. ' 1 He went 2 to the same place [3 where 4 a coffee ranch is 5 also 6 (remote)]. ' (AB136)

The only phrases which may occupy the Locative position are locative relator phrases based on  $\underline{ti}$  'in, at, to, by, through, into, on' or  $\underline{k'alal}$  'as far as'. Of these,  $\underline{ti}$ -phrases are the most common.

- $\frac{1}{1}$  ?ôtš [ $\frac{1}{2}$  ti $\frac{1}{3}$  tšúkel]  $\frac{1}{4}$  ti $\frac{1}{5}$  xûn $\frac{1}{6}$ e.  $\frac{1}{4}$  The  $\frac{1}{5}$  one  $\frac{1}{6}$  (remote)  $\frac{1}{4}$  entered [ $\frac{1}{2}$  (into)  $\frac{1}{3}$  prison].
- 1 2 ft'sbun 2 xk'op 3 tše 2 [5 k'alal evinaxel]. '3 So 4 (remote) 1 hear 2 my words [5 as far as 6 heaven]. ' (MP088)

When occupying the Locative position of a clause, a question clause based on  $\underline{b}\underline{u}$  'where' functions as a relative clause. It may or may not be determined (Cf. 6.3).

- $\frac{114x_25a}{3}$   $\frac{14x_25a}{3}$   $\frac{14x_25a}{$
- 1te<sub>2</sub>sa stalem [4ti<sub>5</sub>bd 626yot<sub>7</sub>e]. 'It is there 2now 3he has come [4the 5where 6you are 7(remote)] (i.e., He has already come there where you are).' (NM098)
- 2.15. The Time Position. The Time constituent of a clause occurs most frequently following the predicate, but may also occur following the manner, locative, or nominal constituents.
- PMT: 111ax 2ti3pak'el [4nas]. '1It was finished 2by 3mudding [4today] (i.e., They finished mudding it today).' (NM573)
- PT: tixpas [ti3mayo]. 'I will do it [in 3May].' (YW003)
- POT: 1tixk'eltik 2yan 3senya [20k'om]. '1We will look at 2another 3sign [4tomorrow] (i.e., We will look at other pictures tomorrow).' (X1.197)
- PLT: 1tšibát 2ti 3xôbel [4 ?ôk'om]. '1I will go 2to 3Las Casas [4tomorrow]. '(NM378)

A Time constituent may be a word, a phrase, or a clause. Words are restricted to temporal statives.

1tšitál [2s6b]. '1I will come [2early].'
1tšaxk'óponot [2°6k'om]. '1I will talk to you [2tomorrow].' (AB236)

The only phrases which may occupy the Time position are temporal relator phrases, based on ti 'at, in, on', k'alal 'when', and 'asta 'until'. Of these ti- and k'alal-phrases are the most common.

- 1tixkútštutik 2sí? [3ti4xúxun 5málk'ak'al6e]. '1We carry 2firewood [3(on) 4each 5afternoon 6(remote)].' (EW002)
- $\frac{1}{1}$  ikfl  $\frac{2k'41al}{50}$   $\frac{3b'k'itun_4to_5e}{1}$ .  $\frac{1}{1}$  saw him  $\frac{1}{2}$  when  $\frac{1}{3}$  was small  $\frac{1}{3}$  still  $\frac{1}{5}$  (remote)  $\frac{1}{3}$ .
- 1xétš 21á 3xpástutik [42ásta 5nilók'tutik 6ti72iskuéla]. '1It was thus 2,3we did [4until 5we came out 60f 7school] (i.e., That's what we did until we left off going to school).' (CL031)
- $\frac{15ata1}{5} \left[ \frac{15ata1}{2} \frac{3ti}{4} \frac{15ata1}{2} \frac{3ti}{4} \frac{15ata1}{2} \right]. \quad \text{'1You come } \left[ \frac{1}{2} \right] \text{ (NM070)}$
- 2.16. The Conditional Position. The Conditional constituent of the clause normally follows Location and Time constituents and precedes Purpose-Cause constituents, but very frequently it is permuted to the left of the predicator. When permuted, its clause may occupy the subject position of a

manner clause based on  $\underline{x\acute{e}t}$  'thus'. The Conditional constituent is always a  $\underline{mi}$ -phrase (7.4).

- 1<u>tšábanuk</u> [2mi3kúšul4to5e]. '1Greet her [2if 3she is living 4still 5(remote)].'
  (NM479)
- 1<u>tšakálbot 2yán 3ló?il [4mislék stšavá?i]</u>. '<sub>1</sub>I will tell you 2another 3story [4if 5good syou hear them] (i.e., I will tell you another story if you like).' (NM054)
- 1tsokes 2xoltik [3mi4tškūt'štik 5tiepoš7e] 8yū?un 8tšix?[lin. '1It puts out of order 2 our heads [3if 4we drink 5(the) 6liquor 7(remote)] 8 because 8 we become angry (i.e., We can't think right if we drink liquor because we become angry).' (F2. 130)
- 1xets 2yù 2ún [3mi4lax 5ka2i 6ti7k'usi 8tšal9e] 10tšakalbot 11ti12yan 13velta.

  '2Because of this, 1it is thus its cause [3if 4,5 I heard 6(the) 7what 8he says 8(remote)] 10 I will tell it to you 11(at) 12 another 13 time (i.e., Therefore if I hear what he says I'll tell you next time).' (NM122)
- 2.17. The Purpose-Cause Position. The Purpose-Cause constituent of a clause occurs most frequently following nominals or the predicator. It often occurs final in the clause and may be occupied by one of two Causative possessed noun phrases (5.10), or the Associative noun phrase (5.7).
- 1xétš 2stálel 3skótol 4k'ák'al [ $_5$ skóx  $_6$ ti $_7$ műlil $_6$ e]. 'It is thus 2their nature 3their allness 4days [ $_5$ its bad cause  $_6$ (the)  $_7$ error  $_8$ (remote)] (i. e., They are like that all the time because of error).' (F2.083)
- 150? 2kū?untik [ati4svėnta 5ti6xt'šūltotik7e]. '1It is able 2by us [ 3(the) 4his good cause 5(the) 6 our supernatural father 7(remote)] (i.e., We can do it because of our supernatural father).'
- 1tšaxk'oponot 2ti3karta [4yu?un 5xtšamel 6ti7kaxnilse]. '1I will talk to you 2by 3letter [4because 6(the) 7my wife 6(remote) 5is sick].' (NM495)
- 12álbun [2yű?unsxétš 4tixná? 5k'űsi 6tšiták'av]. '1Tell me [2so that 3thus 4I will know 5what 6I will answer]. '

When yū'un occurs alone in the P-C position of a Manner Clause based on xets 'thus', it receives phrase stress on its final syllable and has reference to a preceding form with a sense equivalent to English 'therefore'.

1xétš 2yù ?ún... '2Because of this, 1it is thus (that)...

When a subjunctive clause occupies the Purpose-Cause position of the clause, it immediately follows the predicator.

 $\frac{1 \times 4 \times 10}{5}$  [2avá?i]  $\frac{1 \times 4 \times 4}{5}$   $\frac{1 \times 4 \times 4}{5}$   $\frac{1}{5}$   $\frac{1}{5}$ 

- 1avókoluk 2nópo [3ká?itik]. '1Please 2think about it [(so) 3we hear].' (NM220) 1k'élo [2avíl] 3sk'án 4sméltsambel 5smákte?. '1Look at it [(so) 2you see] 3he wants 4its having been made for him 5his fence (i.e., Look at that, he wants a fence made for him).' (PP440)
- 2.18. The Vocative Position. The Vocative constituent of the clause normally occurs clause final, but may also be permuted to first or second position. First position in the clause gives the greatest degree of emphasis. Vocative statives, nouns and names, singly or in series, may occupy the Vocative position.

PV: 1bátik [2šlél]. 'Let's go, [2Manuela]. '

PGV: 1xt'samuntik 2kak'tik 3anénebots4e [5xbankil 6višin]. '2Come on, 1let us borrow 3your nice little gourd 4(remote), [5older brother, 6older sister].' (AB048)

SVPT: 1xáyibošuk<sub>2</sub>ša 3ti<sub>4</sub>lí?oyošuk<sub>5</sub>e [8kermánotak 7tótetak 8mé?8e] 10lá?ik 11.26k'om. '1How many of you 2now 3that 4are here 5(remote) [8my brethren, 7fathers, 8mothers 3(remote)], 10come 11tomorrow. '(X2.274)

VPG: [1tot2e 3me?4e] 5 2 ak'o 6perton. '[1Father 2 (remote), 3mother 4 (remote)], 5 give 6pardon (i. e., Father, mother, excuse us).' (AB151)

#### SUBSETS OF STATIVE CLAUSES

In this chapter and the following one, a number of subsets of clauses are discussed. Tzotzil, and Mayan languages in general, make much use of clauses based on Stative Stems where other languages use a greater variety of construction- and word-types. It has thus seemed appropriate to dedicate a separate chapter to this topic.

With a view to illustrating the extremely common use of stative clauses, certain subsets are presented separately which might otherwise—from a strictly syntactic point of view—be grouped with other subsets as of the same type. It is not supposed that all relevant subsets of stative clauses have been recognized and described; the following may be considered a representative sample:

- 1. Question Clauses
- 2. Negation Clauses
- 3. Attention Clauses
- 4. Manner Clauses
- 5. Location Clauses
- 6. Time Clauses
- 7. Concomitance Clauses
- 8. Contingency Clauses
- 9. Contrary-to-fact Clauses
- 10. Sensory Clauses
- 11. Quantification Clauses
- 12. Numeral Clauses
- 3.1. Question Clauses. There are two kinds of questions: QUESTIONS FOR CONFIRMATION (or lack thereof) and QUESTIONS FOR INFORMATION. A Question For Confirmation is a mi-phrase (7.4), whereas a Question For Information is a clause based on one of four INTERROGATIVE STATIVE STEMS. Three of these are simple; the fourth is composite, consisting of a NUMERAL ROOT followed (like all Numeral Roots) by a CLASSIFIER ROOT. The Interrogative Stems are:
  - 1. xá-(plus classifier root) 'how many'
  - 2. mút'šu 'who'
  - 3. bu 'where'
  - 4. k'ú (or k'úsi) 'what'

The composite Numeral-Classifier Stem asks a question of specific quantity. In addition to its pronoun subject, it may have a Noun, a Determined Noun Phrase, or a clause as subject.

PN only: xá-vo?-ukutik. 'How many (people) are we?'

N: 1xa-kot [2avakaš]. 1How many (animal) [2your cows] (i.e., How many cows do you have)?

dNP: 1xa-yib-oš-uk [2ti3natalik4e]. '1How many (general) of you [2the 3you came (remote) (i.e., How many are there of you that came)?' (X1.218)

Cl: 1xa-vo?-oš-uk [2?6y 3avabtelik]. 1How many (people) of you 2there is your work] (i.e., How many of you have work)?'

Cl: 1xá-yib [2mt 3sk an]. '1How many (general) [2it is not 3they want it] (i.e., How many don't want it)?'

mút'šu asks the identity of a personal nominal referent or is rhetorical (with attention drawn to a personal referent). In questions concerning a personal nominal referent, in addition to the pronoun subject, there may be a noun, a Determined Noun Phrase, or a clause as clause-level nominal constituent.

PN only: mut'suot. 'Who are you?'
N: 1mut'su [2sme?]. '1Who is [2his mother]?'

dNP: 1mút'šu [2ti3x?ét'šesexk'óp 4kú?untik]. 11Who is [2(the) 4our 3interpreter]?' (X1.040)

iCl: mut'su [sitsam]. 'Who [sdied]?' (NM247)

In a rhetorical question (with reference to a person) the subject of mut'su is either a clause with the auxiliary ba 'go' or a clause based on k'an 'lack' whose subject is a clause with the auxiliary ba. In either case, the rhetorical implies a negative response. The use of k'an implies impossibility: its absence (in this construction) implies improbability.

1mút'šu [2k'ám 3bá 4st'šún]. '1Who [2lacking 3went 4he believed it] (i.e., Who could believe it)! (F2. 179) 1mút'šu [2ba 3spas]. '1Who [2went 3he did it] (i.e., Who would do it)!'

bu asks a question of location or is rhetorical (with attention drawn to other than a personal referent. In addition to its pronoun subject, its clauselevel nominal constituent may be a noun, a Determined Noun Phrase, or a clause.

PN only: buot 'Where are you?' N: ba [sna]. 'Where is shis house?' (OD091) dNP:  $_{1}\underline{\text{bû}}$  [ $_{2}\underline{\text{ti}_{3}}\underline{\text{amé?}_{4}}\underline{\text{e}}$ ]. ' $_{1}$ Where is [ $_{2}$ (the)  $_{3}$ your mother  $_{4}$ (remote)]?' iCl:  $_{1}\underline{\text{bû}}$  [ $_{2}\underline{\text{tSixbât}}$ ]. ' $_{1}$ Where [ $_{2}$ are we going]?' (X2, 119)

Rhetoricals based on <u>bū</u> have as subject forms built on the same constructional pattern as rhetoricals based on <u>mūt'šu</u>.

- $_{1}\underline{b}\underline{a}$  [ $_{2}\underline{b}\underline{a}$   $_{3}\underline{k}\underline{a}\underline{s}\underline{u}\underline{l}\underline{u}\underline{k}$ ]. '<sub>1</sub>Where [ $_{2}$ went  $_{3}$ it be alive] (i.e., How would it be alive)!' (X2.204)
- 1bd [2k'ám 3bå 4skóltaukutik]. '1Where [2lacking 3went 4he help us] (i.e., How could he help us)!' (X2.210)

In respect to the rhetorical questions based on  $\underline{\text{mút'}}\underline{\text{su}}$  and  $\underline{\text{bú}}$ , they are invariably rhetorical when  $\underline{\text{k'}}\underline{\text{an}}$  is present or when the subject clause is stative. In the absence of  $\underline{\text{k'}}\underline{\text{an}}$ , however, when the subject clause is intransitive or transitive, such forms may or may not be rhetorical, depending upon context and intonation. It is only in rhetoricals that an auxiliary (in this case always  $\underline{\text{bá}}$ ) may occur with a stative verb.

- 1bû [2k'âm 3bâ 4 ?ôyuk 5ti6mânel]. '1Where [2lacking 3went 4there be 5to 6buy] (i.e., How could it be for sale)!' (X1.110)
- 1ti2 mantšuk 3 isūxat4 e 5 bū [8 bā 7 spās]. '1(The) 2 it be of no consequence 3 he was forced 4 (remote) 5 where [8 went 7 he did it] (i.e., If he hadn't been forced, would he have done it)!'
- 1ti2 mantšuk 3 lax 4 y al 5 mantal 6 ti7 présidente 8 e 9 mut'šu [10 b a 11 b a tuk]. '1 (The)
  2 it be of no consequence 6 the 7 president 8 (remote) 3, 4 said 5 a command
  9 who is it [10 went 11 went] (i.e., If the president had not commanded it, who who would have gone)!'

k' (or k' (si) asks a question concerning (1) the identity of an impersonal nominal referent, (2) cause, (3) purpose, (4) time, (5) circumstance, (6) manner, or (7) general quantity.

In a question of the identity of an impersonal nominal referent, the subject of the clause is a noun stem formed with <u>al</u> (10.8), a Determined Noun Phrase, or a clause.

N: <u>1k'úsi [2pôšilal]</u>. '1What [2medicine]?' (MP073) dNP: <u>1k'úsi [2ti3tšiták'av4e]</u>. '1What is it [2(the) 3I'll answer 4(remote)]?' tCl: <u>1k'úsi [2tšaxák']</u>. '1What [2do you ask]?' (NM547)

In a question concerning <u>cause</u>, the subject of the <u>k'ú</u> clause is always a <u>yú'un</u> phrase.

\[
\frac{1 \text{k'\u03a3}}{1} \left[ 2y\u03a2 \u03a2 \u03a3 \u03a32 \u03a

'<u>d [2yū'dn</u> 3t<u>šabāt]</u>. '¡What [2its cause 3you are going] (i.e., Why are you going)?'

In a question concerning <u>purpose</u>, the subject of the <u>k'úsi</u> clause is a Possessed Noun Phrase with <u>svéntail</u> 'its purpose' as head.

1k'úsi [2svéntail 3ti4natál5e]. '1What is [2its purpose 3(the) 4you came 5(remote)] (i.e., What is the purpose of your having come)?'

The difference between 'cause' and 'purpose' questions is that the 'cause' question inquires concerning the grounds of an action, whereas the 'purpose' question inquires concerning the intended result or subsequent action to be taken.

In a question concerning <u>time</u>, the subject of the <u>k'úsi</u> clause is a noun phrase based on the noun <u>?óra</u> 'time'.

1k'úsi [2º6ra 3tšasútik 4tál]. '1What [2time 3will you return 4coming] (i.e., When will you return here)?'

In a question concerning <u>circumstance</u>, the subject of the <u>k'1</u> clause is a clause having the intransitive verb ? elan as predicator.

1k'([2ša?élan]. '1What [2is your circumstance] (i.e., How are you)?' (NL168)

1k'ú [28?6lan stšismflukutik]. '¡What [2 is the circumstance sthey will kill us] (i.e., Under what circumstances will they kill us)?' (OD078)

In a question concerning <u>manner</u>, the subject of the  $k^{\dagger}\underline{0}$  clause is a clause, the predicate of which is the stative verb  $t \leq 2$ .

1k'd [2tšè?él 3láx 4sműkik]. '1What [2is the manner 3,4they buried him] (i.e., How did they bury him)?' (MC035)

In a question concerning general quantity, the subject of the k'1 clause is a Possessed Noun Phrase with yepal 'its muchness' as head.

- 1k'ú [2yépal 3sk'án]. '1What [2 is its muchness 3 its lack] (i.e., How much is lacking)?' (NM 174)
- 1k'4 [2yépal 3kf1]. '1What [2 is its muchness 3my debt] (i.e., How much is my debt)?' (NM607)

Questions For Information occur as independent sentences in all the examples given above. They may also function as relative clauses when occupying clause or Noun Phrase positions.

- As Subject: 1mu?yuk [2mut'šu 3itšam]. '1There is not [2who 3died] (i.e., No one died).' (NM247)
- As Subject: 126y [2k'dsi 3lax 4yfl 5ti 6d6ktor 7te]. '1There is [2what 5the 6doctor 3.4saw 7there] (i.e., The doctor saw something there).' (NM513)
- As Object: 11ax25a 3ka?i [4k'ú 5t5è?é1 61ax 7spas 8tigdőktor10e]. '1,3I have heard 2now [4what is 5its manner8the 3doctor 10(remote) 6,7did it] (i.e., I have now heard how the doctor did it).' (NL059)
- As Object: 1mi 250? 3tšaválbun [4k'úsi 526ra 6tšasútik 7tál]. '1ff 2can 3you tell me [4 what 5time 6you will return 7coming] (i.e., Can you tell me when you will return here)?' (NL082)
- As Locative: 1 lax 2 st's ay 3 y 6 nton 4 ti 5 k'alal 6 ital 7 te [6 bu 6 isanav]. 1 2 They lost 3 their hearts 4 (the) 5 when 6 it came 7 there [8 where 5 they travelled] (i.e., They were amazed when it came there where they were travelling). (X2.034)
- As Descriptive: 1tšistšúkun 2ti3 xkášlan [4bú 5tši ? ábtex]. '2The 3ladino [4where 5I work] 1ties me (i.e., The ladino where I work keeps me well occupied). '(OD007)
- As Axis:  $_1\underline{ti}[_2\underline{b0}_3\underline{k'alal}_4\underline{s0?}_5\underline{k0?un}]_6\underline{e}_7\underline{t\underline{s}\underline{a}\underline{x}\underline{k}\underline{o}\underline{l}\underline{t}\underline{a}\underline{o}\underline{t}}$ . '<sub>1</sub>(The) [2where 3as far as 4 is able 5by me 6(remote)] 7I'll help you (i.e., I'll help you as much as I can).' (NM094)
- As Possessor: 1x4? 2tispasaxe 4ti[5mût'šu 6tštál 7te, 20]e. '1That is it: 2the 3his fare 4the [5who 6will come 7there 8(conclusive) 9(remote)] (i.e., It's the fare of the one who will go there).' (NM162)

A question construction is used as a relative clause only when the reference is not specific. If the reference is specific, the Determiner  $\underline{ti}$  is used (7.1). Compare the following:

Reference may be made indefinite in clauses of the above type by inflecting the interrogative stem for subjunctive mode and postposing no?oš (limitative) (8.5).

(F2.111)

[½k'úsuk²no?oš] 3tšak'án 4šû? 5tšakák'bot. '4Can 5I give you [²precisely ½what it be] 3you want (i.e., I can give you whatever you want).'
[½mút'šuk²no?oš] 3tšópol 4tšfibaxinik. '4They molest them 3wickedly [²precisely ½who it be] (i.e., Whoever it is, they molest them wickedly).'
(F2.175)
½tixná? ½ti[3búk4no?oš] 5?óyukutik 6té 7?óy. '1I know 2that [4 precisely 3where it be] 5we are 6there 7he is (i.e., I know that he is wherever we are).'

Unlike other stative stems, interrogatives do not require subjunctive inflection when occupying the subject position of a negation clause (3.2).

1md2me [3mút'šu 4tšk'6pox]. '1It's not 2(emphatic) [3who 4will talk] (i.e.,
No one is to talk).' (X1.011)
1md2me [3bú 4tšbát]. '1It's not 2(emphatic) [3where 4he will go] (i.e., Don't let him go anywhere).'

3.2. Negation Clauses. A NEGATION CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on the stative verb stem mo 'is not.' In an earlier paper treating only the verb phrase (Cowan and Merrifield, 1967), mo was considered a particle occurring in the verb phrase. Here it is treated as an independent predicator.

The subject of a Negation Clause may be another clause or a  $\underline{ti}$ -Phrase. The  $\underline{ti}$ -Phrase consists of the preposition  $\underline{ti}$  and a clause subject to the same grammatical constraints as clauses directly occupying the subject position of a Negation Clause.

One such constraint is that if the clause subject is perfective, it must also be marked as subjunctive. This applies to stative clauses occupying this position since they are syntactically perfective (2.6), as well as to perfective active clauses.

1md [2vinikuk 3ti4lax 5spas6e]. '[2(It be) a man 3that 4,5 did it 6(remote)] is
not (i.e., It was not a man who did it).'
1md [2ti3sventauk]. 'It is not [2on 3their account].'
1md [2smanoxbukun]. 'It is not [2they have bought it for me] (i.e., They have not bought it for me).'

There are two stative stems which contract with md when following it: xá? 'it is that' and 26y 'there is'. They contract to become má?uk and md?yuk, respectively (uk being the subjunctive ending).

1ma?uk 2tixk'opontik. '1It is not that 2we will talk to him.' (X1.055)

1mú?yuk 2k'úsi 3lá 4xtšántutik. '1There is not 2what 3,4we learned (i.e., We did not learn anything).' (CL029)

A third fused form is <u>mantšuk</u> whose derivation is otherwise unknown, the stem <u>language</u> and occurring elsewhere in the language unless it can be related to the imperative form <u>lantšan</u> Be quiet. As predicator of an independent negation clause, <u>mantšuk</u> has the meaning It is of no consequence. It may have a clause or conditional phrase as subject.

imantšuk 2 tšavák bun. 'It is of no consequence 2 you give it to me (i.e., It isn't necessary that you give it to me).' (AB115)
 imantšuk 2 mi3 tóyol 4 stóxol. 'It is of no consequence 2 if 4 its price 3 is high (i.e., It doesn't matter if it is expensive).' (NM602)

A clause based on <u>mantšuk</u> may also occur with the Determiner  $\underline{ti}$  (6.3) and the Deictic ending  $\underline{e}$  (6.4) in the Conditional Position of a clause in the sense of a NEGATIVE CONTRARY-TO-FACT CONDITION.

[1ti2mantšuk 3tixt'šún4e] 5tškíť'Š 8múl. '[1(The) 2it is of no consequence 3I believe it 4(remote)] 5I receive 8fault (i.e., If I didn't believe it, I would be sad).' (NL070)

[1ti2mantšuk 3 itšam 4ti5stot 6ti7k'ak'al8e] 8 xetš 10 mu 11 šixtšam. '[1(The) 2 it is of no consequence 4 the 5 father of 6 the 7 sun 8 (remote) 3 died] 8 thus 10 it is not 11 we die (i.e., If the sun's father had not died, then we would not die).' (SMO13)

A further restraint which applies to the predicator mu is that it must be subjunctive unless its subject is timeless or perfective. The subjunctive of mu (negative) is muk rather than the expected muk (Cf. mu 'ascend' and its subjunctive muk).

imdk 2tšibat. '2I will go it be not (i.e., I will not go).'
imdk 2šibat. '2I went it be not (i.e., I did not go).'

The exception to this is when  $\underline{m}\underline{u}$  is modified by a modal which indicates that the subject is effectively true in present time even though marked for completive or incompletive aspect. The modals in question are  $\underline{\underline{s}}\underline{a}$  (perfective) and  $\underline{to}$  (present continuative).

1mu2to 3tškak!. '3I will give it 1 is not 2 yet (i.e., I will not yet give it).'
(AB171)

1md25a 3t5kft'5tik 4md1. '3We will receive 4fault 1is not 2now (i.e., We will not be sad now).' (MG021)

A further exception has been mentioned above in 3.1; namely, that interrogatives (which are stative verbs) do not require the subjunctive ending when occupying the subject of a negation clause. On the other hand, unless the predicator ma is modified by an appropriate modal—those mentioned above plus the sequence 20 no 205 'certainly' or me (emphatic)—ma itself must be subjunctive when its subject is interrogative.

- 1md2to [3bd 4tsasa?be]. '[3Where 4you will seek her] 1is not 2yet (i.e., You have not yet sought her anywhere).' (AB139)
- 1mú28a [3bú 4k'álal 5 tsút 6ti7kó?ntontikse]. '[3Where 4when 5will return 6(the) 7our hearts 8(remote)] 1is not 2now (i.e., Not at any time did we realize it).' (PP268)
- 1md<sub>2</sub> 203no 205 [4bd 51r261]. '[4Where 5he is here 6(immediate)] 1 is not 2(conclusive) 3precisely (i.e., He is certainly not here anywhere).' (AB137)
- 1ma2me [3ba 45bat]. '[3Where 4he goes] 1is not 2(emphatic) (i.e., Don't let him go anywhere).' (AJ037)
- 1mak [2ba 3tškáltik]. '[2Where 3we will say it] 1be it not (i.e., We won't say it anywhere).' (PP213)

Since the subject of a negation clause may only be a clause or a <u>ti-Phrase</u>, in order for constituents which are ordinarily nominal to be negated, they must be reinterpreted as clauses. Their occurrence with the subjunctive ending confirms that they are so reinterpreted. The following examples illustrate how various classes of clause constituents are negated.

- Manner:  $_1\underline{m0}$   $_2\underline{v0koluk}$   $_3\underline{la}$   $_4\underline{xta}$ .  $_2$ Be it trouble  $_3$   $_4$ I found it  $_1$ is not (i.e., I found it without difficulty).' (NM605)
- Manner: 1mt 2xetšuk 3láx 4yál. '1It is not 2be it thus 3,4he said it (i.e., It wasn't that way that he said it).' (X1.087)
- Object: 1mu 2pošiluk 3tixk'an. '1It is not 2be it medicine 3I want (i.e., It is not medicine I want).'
- Object: 1md 2 ? Isimuk 3 1ax 4 smambe. 1 It is not 2 be it corn 3, 4 he bought for her (i. e., It was not corn that he bought her).
- Subject: 1md 2kôl 3xnft'Sonuk 4itSúkat. 'It is not 2, 3be it my child 4he was jailed (i.e., It was not my child who was jailed).'
- Subject: 1mi 2mu 3x6?ukot 1ax 5aman. 'If 2it is not 3be it you 4, 5you bought it (i.e., Was it not you who bought it)?'
- Time: 1md 2ti3 2 orauk 4 t ital. 'It is not 2 at 3 be it time 4 I will come (i.e., I will not come right away).'
- Time: 1md 2?epuk 3k'ak'al 41?ay. '1It is not 2 be it many 3 days 4 he was there (i.e., He was not there many days).' (NM153)
- Locative: 1mu 2117uk3i 41ax 5yak!. 'It is not 2be it here 3(immediate) 4, 5he put it (i.e., It wasn't here that he put it).'

- Locative: 1mt 2ti3tf?koraluk 4tš?6tš. 1It is not 2by 3be it opening-corral 4it will enter (i.e., It is not by the gate of the corral that it enters).
- Purpose-Cause: 1mu 2ti3skoxuk 4pos 5itsam. 'It is not 2by 3be it the bad cause of 4liquor 5he died (i.e., It was not on account of liquor that he died).'
- Purpose-Result: 1mú 2yú ?unuk 3pléito 4tixpástik 5stší ?uk. 'It is not 2be it because 3fighting 4we are doing 5with them (i.e., It is not because we are fighting with them).' (F2. 194)
- Quantitative: 1mu 2 2 épuk 3 ták'in 4 láx 5 yák'bun. 'It is not 2 be it much 3 money 4 5 he gave me (i. e., It wasn't much money that he gave me).'
- Cuantitative: 1mu 2xkôtuk3no 208 4 it's ay 5ti 8 vaka87e. It is not 2 be it one (animal) 3 precisely 4 was lost 5 (the) 8 his cattle 7 (remote) (i.e., It was not just one of his cattle that was lost).
- 3.3. Attention Clauses. An ATTENTION CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on the stative stem  $\underline{xa?}$ .  $\underline{xa?}$  is lexically empty and serves only to direct special attention to its subject. As in the case of other stative verbs, its post-posed pronominal subject may be in cross-reference with a clause-level nominal constituent which, in the third person, may be a noun phrase or an independent clause (including another  $\underline{xa?}$  clause with nonthird person subject).
- 1xâ? 2xtôt. '1That is it: 2he's my father.'
  1xâ? 2tsk'ân 3svê?el 4ti5kampâna6e. '1That is it: 4the 5bell 6(remote) 2wants
  3food.' (FB022)
  1xâ? 2xô?okutik6i 4tšix?ôk'. '1That is it: 2it's we 3(immediate): 4we cry.'
  (PP285)

The pronominal subject may alternately be in double function as a nominal of a following clause which may or may not itself be embedded in a determined phrase. This situation is not limited to third person subjects.

- 1x6?on 2md 3lax 4ka?i. 'It is I: 2it is not 3,4I heard (i.e., It is I that did not hear).'
  1x6?ot 2ti3?axvalilot 4kd?untutik5e. 'It is you: 2(the) 3you are 4our 3elected
- officials  $_{5}$ (remote). (CL066)

If a clause occupies its subject, an attention clause may occupy a nominal position of another clause, or the Possessor position of a Possessed Noun Phrase.

As agent: 1md2me 3šakomesuntutik [4x6?ot 5ti6?áxvalilot 7kd?untutik6e].

'1Not 2(emphatic) 3you abandon us (excl) [4it is you: 5 (the) 6you are 7 our

 $_{8}$ elected officials  $_{8}$ (remote)] (i.e., You who are our elected officials must not fail us).' (CL066)

As indirect goal: 1xá? 2véntisyon 3lá 4xk'ámbot [5x6?ot 6atálel 7tšakóltavan].

'1That is it: 2blessing 3,4 I asked of you [5it is you: 6your nature is 7you characteristically help] (i.e., It is a blessing I asked of you whose nature it is to help).'

As direct goal: <a href="tisaxk'6ponot 2tigkarta">1 tigkarta</a> [4x6?ot 5tigtotil 72 axvalilot 8ku?untutik].

'I will talk to you 2by 3letter [4(it is) you 5(the) 8 our 6 top 7 elected officials].

(CL001)

When an attention clause is the possessor of a possessed noun phrase, its subject agrees in person and number with the possessed noun in the Item position of the phrase.

1tixk'antutik 2vókol 3ti4atòxól [5x6'ot 6ti7'6y 8avabtel9e]. 1We (excl) ask 2trouble 3in 4your presence [5it is you 6that 7there is 8your work 8(remote)] i.e., We ask help of you who have authority).' (CL040)

1láx<sub>2</sub> ša<sub>3</sub>xná?tutik <sub>4</sub>ti<sub>5</sub>lék <sub>6</sub>ti<sub>7</sub>avábtel<sub>8</sub>e [<sub>9</sub>xó?ošuk <sub>10</sub>ti<sub>11</sub>?áxvalilošuk<sub>12</sub>e]. <sub>1,3</sub>We (excl) know <sub>2</sub>now<sub>4</sub> that <sub>5</sub>is good <sub>6</sub>(the) <sub>7</sub>your work <sub>8</sub>(remote) [<sub>9</sub>it is you <sub>10</sub>(the) <sub>11</sub>you are the elected officials <sub>12</sub>(remote)] (i.e., We now know that your work is good, you who are the elected officials).' (CL011)

An attention clause with  $x\underline{a}$ ? modified by the modal  $\underline{to}$  (present continuative) relates two constituents temporally, specifying that the action or state of the second constituent occurs  $\underline{at}$  the  $\underline{time}$  indicated by the first constituent. (It is structurally and semantically parallel to a concomitance clause in a temporal position (3.7)).

In the first two examples below the first constituent is a Time constituent, the second a subject. In the third example, the constituents are conditional and subject.

- 1xá?2to [3k'álal 4ti5yán 6vélta] 7it'ší 8?0š. 1That is it 2still [3when 4at 5another 6time] 7it grew 8already (i. e., It was not until another time that it grew). (MG081)
- return 5coming 6(remote)] 7arriving 8I will pay you 8(the) 10my debt 11(remote) (i. e., Not until I return will I pay you what I owe you).
- 3.4. Manner Clauses. A MANNER CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on stative stems of manner whose subject may be indicative clauses or mi-phrases.

- 1xa? 21ek [3xpastik 41ek 5k'in]. '1That is it: 2it is good [3we make (a) 4good fiestal (i.e., It's good that we make a big fiesta), ' (FB046)
- 1tšópol [2tisk'úsi 4tsnópikse]. 'It is evil [2(the) 2what 4they are thinking (remote)]. ' (MP064)
- vokol [ststšan sabtel]. 'It is trouble [she learns swork] (i.e., It is with difficulty he learns how to work).' (EW026)
- 1xa? me 16k [4mistšatále]. '1That is it 2(emphatic): 1t is good [4 if 5you will come (remote) (i.e., It would be good if you would come). (NM576)

A subset of Manner Clauses have xétš 'thus' as predicate, xétš, an anaphoric substitute, is lexically empty and points back to a preceding lexical form.

- 1xétš [2iméltsax 3ti4xnátutik]. '1It is thus [3(the) 4our (excl) house 2was made].' (HB021)
- 1xétš [2ik'ásbat 3sk'ób 4ti5bólomse]. '1It is thus [4the 5tiger's s(remote) 3paw was broken]. '(NT007)
- 3.5. Location Clauses. A LOCATION CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on three stative verb stems of location: It? 'here', tê 'there (proximal), and lum 'there (distal). In addition to the pronoun subject, the clause-level nominal constituent may be a noun, a Determined Noun Phrase, or a clause, except for lum which only occurs with clauses.
- Pn only: 'mi2lf?otai. 'If 2you are here 3(immediate) (i. e., Are you here)?' (AB007)
- Pn only: téanik. 'Be there (pl) (i.e., Stay there).'
- N: 11.7 [2 attiluk'si]. 'Here are [2 your turkeys (immediate)]. ' (SM045)
- N: imi testo [ame?]. 'iff there still [a your mother] (i.e., Is your mother still there)?'
- dNP:  $_{1}\underline{\text{If?}_{2}\underline{\text{to}}}$  [ $_{3}\underline{\text{ti}_{4}}\underline{\text{atot}_{5}}\underline{\text{e}}$ ]. '[ $_{3}$ (The) 4your father  $_{5}$ (remote)] 1 is here 2 still.' tCL:  $_{1}\underline{\text{If?}_{2}}\underline{\text{me}}$  [ $_{3}\underline{\text{tskák'}}$ ]. '1 it's here 2 (emphatic) [ $_{3}$ I'll put it].' (AB074)

- sCl: <u>ité, ša [3 vá ?al]</u>. 'iIt's there now [3he is standing].' (PP007) iCl: <u>ité, to [3 tš ?flinik]</u>. 'iIt's there still [3 they are angry].' (PP177)
- sCl: 11m [21ek sti4sxinse]. '1It's there (distal) [2good s(the) 4his book 5(remote)] (i.e., His book is very good). (PP341)

In addition to occurring as an independent sentence (as in the examples above), a Location clause may occupy the locative position of another clause.

1paro 251 el [311 4tisbalumil]. '1It is simply 2 fear [3here 4 in (the) 5 world]. ' (F2.004)

It may also occupy the descriptive position of a Noun Phrase or a nominal position of another clause.

- As Descriptive: 1½ak'űšubinuntutik 2xkótoltutik 3ti[4117 5nákaluntutik 6ti7yólon 8básob]. '1You will pity us (excl) 2all of us (excl) 3that [4here 5we are living 6at 7its underneathness 8Basob] (i. e., You will have pity on all of us who live here at Under Basob).' (CL038)
- As Subject: 11ek 2ti[3te 4ts?abtex 5ti6atseb7e]. '1Is good 2that [3is there 5the 6your daughter 7(remote) 4works] (i.e., It is good that your daughter works there).'
- As Subject: 1sna? [210m3e]. 1/2 That one 3(remote)] knows it. 1 (PP274)
- 3.6. Time Clauses. A TIME CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on temporal stative stems whose subject may be an indicative clause.
- 1pátil [2ibát 3ti45bánkiltak5e]. 'IIt was afterwards [3(the) 4his brothers 5 (remote) 2 went]. ' (AJ015)
   1sób [2tšatálik]. 'It is early (that) [2 you will come]. ') X1.224)
   1tšá?ex [2tšxúl]. 'It is the day after tomorrow [2 he will arrive home].'

In addition to occurring as an independent sentence (as in the examples above), a Time clause may occupy the Time position of another clause, or the axis of a <u>ti-Phrase</u> which occupies the Time position.

1tšaxk'oponot 2tšá?ex. '1I will talk to you 2the day after tomorrow.'
1itál 2ti3pátil. '1He came 2at 3the back (i.e., He came afterwards).'

It may also occupy the axis of a <u>mi</u>-Phrase or a nominal position of another clause.

- As Axis: 1más 21ék 3mi [456b 5tšixtál]. '1Most 2good is 3if [4it is early 5we will come] (i.e., It is best we come early.' (X1.213)
  As Subject: 1xétš 2vû 2ún [3pátil 4tál 5yík untutik 8ti7yájval 8kavíltotik 6].
- As Subject: 1xets 2vù 2dn [3patil 4tal 5yik'untutik sti7yajval skaviltotik e].

  2Because of this, 1it was thus [3afterwards 4came 5they called us (excl) 6the 7bosses of 8the presidency (remote)] i.e., Therefore it was afterwards the authorities came and called us). MS017)
- 3.7. Concomitance Clauses. A CONCOMITANCE CLAUSE is a subset of clauses based on the stative stem y6? 'same', and which may occupy the

Locative or Temporal position of a clause. The subject of a Concomitance Clause is a clause whose reference is concomitant in time or place with that of the matrix clause.

When the reference is temporal, yo? is always modified by the modal to (present continuative).

1y<u>6 ? to [3mu 4tšabát] 5 ?álbungno ? oš 7kómel gtigk usi 10tšak an 11tixpás 12e.</u> 'is same still is it is not ayou will go] stell me oprecisely staying (the) what toyou want til do to remote) (i.e., During the time until you go, tell me what you want me to do).'

1y6?2to [3k'álal 4kúšulukutik] 5tškálbetik 6kómel 7ti6kólexníť sontik10e 11ti12mú 13me 14spásik 15pléto. 11s same 2still [3when 4we are alive] swe tell them estaying (the) e eour children 10 (remote) 11 that 12 it is not 18 (emphatic) 14they make 15fighting (i.e., While we are alive, we tell our children that they should not fight).

When the reference is locational, the subject of yo? is a question clause based on bu 'is where'.

1yó? [2bd 3ipák'tsax 4xdn 5vélta] 6xá? 7té 8ipák'tsax 8yán 10vélta 11ti12káro13e. Is same where sit got stuck one stime sthat is it: it is there sit got stuck another 10time 11the 12bus 13 (remote) (i.e., In the same place where it got stuck once, there the bus got stuck again).'

tibat 2y6? [3ba 4pinka 52ukge]. 'tHe went 2 is same [3where 4 is a coffee ranch salso (remote)] (i.e., He went to the same place where a coffee ranch is also). (AB136)

- 3.8. Contingency Clauses. A CONTINGENCY CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on three stative stems borrowed from Spanish: persa 'it is necessary' (from a fuerza), repenta 'it is possible' (from de repente), and ?apural 'it is determined' (from apurar).
- persa [2tšbá 3xk'el 4tisxtšámelee]. 'It is necessary [2going 3I look at 4the sick (remote) (i.e., I must go and see the sick). (NM233) 1persa [2tixk'an 3ti4xat's e]. 'It is necessary [2I want 3the 4credit 5(remote)]

(i.e., I have to ask for it on credit).' (NM403)

- tškál no os repenta [tškóm kuátrosientos pesos o más]. II am saying it 2011y 3it is possible [5400 spesos 70r smore 4 will remain] (i.e., I am only saying that it is possible that 400 pesos or more will remain).' (NM382)
- 1repenta [2tstal 3 26k'om]. 'It is possible [2he will come stomorrow].' 12apurál 2tsk'án 3tšbát 4ti5sná] 'It is determined (2he wants 3he will go 4to shis house (i.e., He has decided that he wants to go home).'

'apural [2tšixbat]. 'It is determined [2we will go] (i.e., We have decided

that we are going).'

3.9. Contrary-to-Fact Clauses. A CONTRARY-TO-FACT CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses which are syntactically similar to Negation Clauses. They are based on four stative stems each of which has unique collocational limitations. The four stems are: k'án 'was nearly fulfilled', náka 'lest it be', táka 'that it were', and máka 'don't let it be'. k'án is a double-function root functioning also as a transitive stem (10.1). The phonological shape of náka, táka, and máka is anomalous. They are very likely fused forms which were once syntacticly complex. This view is supported by evidence from the Ch'enalo' dialect of Tzotzil where the sequence ti ?ák'o is the functional equivalent of Huixtec táka.

These four verbs take subjunctive clauses as subject—<u>máka</u> only perfective clauses; the others, any but perfective clauses (discounting negation clauses which are perfective).

A Clause based on k'an may occur as an independent sentence.

½'án [½'šán ½'šámukun]. '¡It was nearly fulfilled [½I die] (i.e., I almost died).'
½'án ½mű ½mű ½bátukun]. '¡It was nearly fulfilled [¾I go ½is not] (i.e., I almost didn't go).'

| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't go).'
| Almost didn't

A Clause based on naka occupies the purpose-cause position of a clause.

1mû 2šabát 3náka4me [5smflot]. '1Is not 2you go 3lest 4(emphatic) [5they kill you] (i. e., Don't go lest they kill you).'

1lók'eso 2 asempat 3náka4me [5xášp'uxan 6ti 7²át'šel]. '1Take off 2your sandals 3lest 4 (emphatic) [5you slip 6in (the) 7mud].'

A Clause based on taka occupies the Conditional position of a clause.

- 1taka [2xd?uk 3kd?un4e]. '1That it were [2it be able 3by me 4(remote)] (i.e.,
  If I could do it).'
- 1xá? 2lék 3táka [4k'ótuk 5ti6pásel7e]. '1That is it: 2it is good 3that it were [4it arrive 5by 6being done 7(remote)] (i.e., It would be good if it happened).'

A Clause based on <u>maka</u> occupies the Object position of a quotation clause based on <u>?al</u> 'say' inflected for timeless aspect. In this construction <u>?al</u> does not have reference to overt speech, but is best translated as 'thought' (and as completive aspect even though inflected for timeless).

 $_{1}$  maka  $[_{2}$  x6  $^{9}$  ukot]  $_{3}$  8 kal $_{4}$  e.  $_{1}$  Not let it be  $[_{2}$  it be you]  $_{3}$ I thought  $_{4}$  (remote) (i. e., I thought it was you).'

- 1 máka [2? isimuk 3 skútšox] 4 škál. '1 Not let it be [2 it be corn 3 he is carrying]
  4 I thought (i.e., I thought it was corn he was carrying).'
- 3.10. Sensory Clauses. A SENSORY CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on one of the two noun stems yâ?yel 'its feeling', and yflel 'its same appearance'. It may have an indicative clause as subject. yâ?yel is always permuted to a position following its subject or following the predicate of the clause which is its subject. yflel may permute to a position following the predicate of the clause which is its subject. A Sensory clause is semantically and syntactically similar to a Situation Clause (4.3).
- [12ávyon 2ti3láx 4spáxes 5ti6plétu] 7yá2yel. '[It is an airplane 2that 3,4stopped 5the 6fighting] 7it seems.' (OD097)
- [1mas 2mu] 3ya 2yel [4ti5ve?elilee]. '[4The 5food 6(remote) (is) 1most 2savory] sit seems.'
- [1mut] 2yflel [3ti4sot's5e]. '[1Is a bird] 2it appears [3the 4bat 5(remote)] (i.e., The bat has the appearance of a bird).'
- 1yflel [2amúl3 ?0]. '[2It is your error 3certainly (that)] that the same appearance (i.e., You still haven't made amends for your error).' (PP161)
- 3.11. Quantification Clauses. A QUANTIFICATION CLAUSE is a subset of clauses based on the quantitative stative verbs 26p 'much, many', 26y 'there is', and xút 'little'.
- 26y indicates an unspecified but appreciably large quantity. It may have as subject a noun, a Determined noun phrase, or a clause.
- N:  $\frac{26y}{PP441}$ . 'There is [2their money] (i.e., They have money).'
- dNP: 126y [2ti3maestroetik4e 5ti6xúxun 7paráxe]. 1There are [2(the) 3teachers 4(remote) 5in 6each 7section]. (CL061)
- tCl: 126y [2iyálik 3ti4xóbel]. '1There are [2they said it 3in 4Las Casas] (i.e., Some in Las Casas said it).' (MC054)
- iCl: 126y [21542 3y42unik]; 426y [515váyik]. '1There are [2it is able 3by them]; 4there are [5they sleep] (i.e., Some are able to do it; some sleep).' (SD006)

A question clause may occupy the nominal constituent of an <u>?6</u>y clause to indicate the existence of an indefinite person, place, etc.

1 26y [2 mūt'šu 314 4 xt4]. '1 There is [2 who 3,4 I found] (i.e., I found someone).'
1 mū 2 yuk [2 mūt'šu 314 4 xk'6 pon]. '1 There is not [2 who 3,4 I talked to] (i.e., I didn't talk to anyone).'

126y [2bd 3tst'šdnik]. '1There are [2where 3they will believe it] (i.e., There are those somewhere who will believe it).'

- 1mu?yuk [2bu 3šaxk'opon]. 'There is not[, where I talk to you] (i.e., I haven't talked to you anywhere).'
- 'ep'many, much' may have a noun, a noun phrase, or a clause as subiect.
- N: 126p [2sk'ak'al]. '1There is much [2his fire] (i.e., He has a high fever).' (NM368)
- dNP: 126p, to [sti4kristšánoetik slí2sto]. 'Are many still [sthe 4people shere still] (i.e., There are still many people here). (MS092)
- iCl: 17ep [2tš?6k' sti4kristšánoetikse]. 'There are many [3the 4people 5(remote) cry (i.e., Many people cry). (MC048)

xút only occurs with subjunctive inflection, and may have a noun a noun phrase, or a clause as subject.

- Modals: 1te2to 3pero 4xútuk58a6no os. '1It is there 2still 3but 4a little 5now conly. (i.e., It is still there but there is only a little now).' (NM559)
- N: 11á 2xpás 3xútuk [4kánal]. 12 I made 3it be a little [4gain] (i.e., I made a little gain).' (F2. 130)
- PNP: 12 ák'bun 2xútuk [2stšápbil 4ti5kólomense]. 'Give me 2it be a little [4the sbees' shoney a (remote)] (i.e., Give me a little (of) the bees' honey),' (SM025)
- tCl: 1?ép 2xútuk [31á 4xmán 5tickíšim7e]. 'It is much 2it be little [3 4I bought 5(the) 6my corn 7(remote)] (i.e., I bought quite a lot of corn). (NM611) sCl: 126y 2xútuk [3bátem 4ti5xáts]. '1There is 2it be a little [3gone 4on 5cre-
- ditl (i.e., There is a little out on credit).' (NM170)

xút may occur as axis of a mi-Phrase indicating absolute negation (7.4).

- [1mi2xútuk] 3mú?yuk 4k'úsi 5lá 6xtšántutik. '[1ff 2a little] 3there is not 4what 5 6we learned (i.e., We didn't learn even a little).' (CL032)
- 3.12. Numeral Clauses. A NUMERAL CLAUSE is a subset of clauses based on Numeral Statives.

There are twelve simple NUMERAL STEMS: xún 'one', tšá? 'two', <u>'?óš</u> 'three', <u>tšán</u> 'four', <u>xó?</u> 'five', <u>vák</u> 'six', <u>xúk</u> 'seven', <u>vášak</u> 'eight', <u>bálun</u> 'nine', <u>láxun</u> 'ten', <u>búlutš</u> 'eleven', <u>láxtša?</u> 'twelve'.

Numeral Stems 'thirteen' to 'nineteen' are formed by preposing the Numeral Stems for 'three' to 'nine' to the Numeral Stem for 'ten'.

?6š-láxun 'thirteen' tšán-láxun 'fourteen' Numerals are incomplete without a CLASSIFIER Stem of which there are four main classes: a large class of 70 (or more) 'unit' classifiers; <u>vīnik</u> the 'score' classifier; <u>bôk'</u> the 'zontle' (i.e. 400) classifier; and <u>mīl</u> the 'thousand' classifier. These Classifiers are postposed to Numerals to form the names of the MULTIPLES 1-19 units, 1-19 score, 1-19 zontles, and 1-19 thousands.

```
xó?-laxun-p'éx 'fifteen round things' tšá?-ték' 'two plants' tšán-vľnik 'four score (i. e. eighty)' tšá?-bók' 'two zontles (i. e. 800) 'cős-míl 'three thousand'
```

The remainder of the Numerals are formed in two ways. The first involves a third person possessed Multiple with the 'score' classifier, a preposed Basic Numeral other than 'one' (i.e. two to nineteen), and a further preposed Multiple having the general 'unit' classifier <u>Ib</u>. This construction forms the Numerals for non-multiple numbers 21-39, 41-59,..., 361-379.

```
1x6 ? ob 2stšá ? vinik 'lfive 2 its-two-scores (i.e. twenty-five)'
1láxuneb 2 y ó švinik 'lten 2 its-three-scores (i.e. fifty)'
1xún 2 stšá ? vinik 'lone 2 its-two-scores (i.e. twenty-one)'
1xó ? laxuneb 2 stšánvinik 'lfifteen 2 its-four-scores (i.e. seventy-five)'
```

It is difficult to verbalize the meaning of the above construction in English, but it is possible to read such a name as x6?ob stša?vinik 'twenty-five' as 'five units of the second score'.

Since this system is falling out of use, especially for the higher numbers, it is not certain how the names for 381-399 were formed. There is, however, a simple additive construction based on the third person possessed form of the accompaniment noun stem tší?uk. This construction is also used for naming smaller numbers by those who no longer use the other construction. Thus the following number names are also used based on tší?uk:

```
1xbók' 2stší?uk 3láxunvinik '1one-400 2with 3ten-score (i.e. 600)'
12óšvinik 2stší?uk 3xó?ob '1three-score 2with 3five (i.e. 65)'
1xúkvinik 2stší?uk 3láxuneb '1seven-score 2with 3ten (i.e. 150)'
1láxunvinik 2stší?uk 3xó?ob '1ten-score 2with 3five (i.e. 205)'
```

The classifier <u>mfl</u> 'thousand' has been taken into the system from Spanish mainly in speaking of quantities of money and is used in a way similar to other classifiers.

```
tšá?míl 2láx 3stóx. '2,3He paid two thousand (pesos for it).'
126smíl 2sk'án. '1Three thousand (pesos) is needed.'
```

The Spanish forms <u>cien</u> and <u>ciento</u> have also been introduced into the system, but require that a numeral which precedes them have the general counter Ib.

```
[1vášakib 2siénto] 3láx 4stóx 5svákaš. '[(It was ) 1eight 2hundred (pesos)] (that) 3,4 he paid for 5his ox.'

1xútuk 2mú 3stá [4siénto] 5itsób. '1It be a little 2is not 3it reach [4a hundred] 5was gathered (i.e., A little less than one hundred (pesos) was collected.'

(NM207)

[1sién] 2láx 3yák'. '[1It is a hundred] (that) 2,3he gave.'
```

There is another Basic Numeral <a href="26?lol">26?lol</a> 'one half' which also may occur in place of the preposed Multiple in the construction which names non-multiple numbers. In this construction it indicates one half of the value of the following Classifier.

```
\frac{126201}{1200} \frac{2 \times 56 \times 1}{1000} 'tone-half 20ne-zontle (i.e. 200)' \frac{262101}{1000} \frac{2 \times 100}{1000} 'tone-half 20ne-row (i.e. half a row)'
```

When <u>?6?lol</u> occurs in construction with a classifier whose multiplier is more than one, the classifier and its multiplier must be nominalized by the suffix Al, and possessed with third person pronoun prefix (position two).

```
1 26 2101 2 stšá 2 bok'ol '1 one-half (of one zontle) 2 its-second zontle (i.e. 600)'
1 26 2101 2 stšíbal 3 sién '1 one-half (of one hundred) 2 its-second 3 hundred (i.e. 150)'
1 26 2101 2 stšá 2 milal '1 one-half (of one thousand) 2 its-second thousand (i.e. 1500)'
```

26?lol may occur in construction with unpossessed nouns.

```
26?lol 2ák'ubal 'one-half a-night (i.e. midnite)'
26?lol k'ák'al 'one-half a-day (i.e. midday)'
26?lol 2ámak' 'one-half a-patio (i.e. in the middle of the patio).'
```

<sup>?6?</sup>lol may occur in the additive construction with tši?uk.

- 1xbok' 2stši?uk 3?o?lol 'ione-zontle 2with 3one-half (i.e. one and a half zontles)'
- 1tšán-xóv 2stší?uk 3°26°lol '1four-armbreadths 2with 3one-half (i.e. four and a half armbreadths)'
- 1xúkub 276ra 3stšť?uk 476?lol '1seven 2hours 3with 4one-half (i.e. half past seven o'clock)'

Nouns are classified into gender classes by their occurrence with 'unit' Classifiers. If a Numeral names a number larger than twenty, it ends in other than a 'unit' Classifier. If the noun quantified by such a Numeral is of the gender class which occurs with the general Classifier <u>Ib</u>, the Unit Classifier need not occur.

1tšá?vinik 2k'ák'al 'iforty 2days'
1láxuneb 2stšá?vinik 3péšu 'iten (of) 2its second-score 3pesos (i.e. thirty pesos)'

If, however, the noun belongs to other than the general gender class and is quantified by such a Numeral, the appropriate Unit Classifier must be appended to the Numeral by a <u>ti</u>-Phrase, occupying the Manner position of the Numeral clause. The noun quantified is the subject of the clause.

[1tša?-mfl 2ti3kót] 4ti5svákaš6e. '4(The) 5his cattle 6(remote) [(number) 1two thousand 2 3(of animals)].'
[1x6?ob 2 stša?vinik 3ti4p'éx] 5láx 6avák'bun 7ti9naránšaš9e. '7The 8 oranges 9(remote) (that) 5, 8 you gave me [(numbered) 1, 2 twenty-five 3,4(of round things)].'

Numeral clauses may occur as independent sentences as in the examples above, or occupy the nominal positions of clauses.

1bá 2 sxák' [3ti4 ?6štšop 5ná]. '1Went 2they ask [3at 4three-kinds 5houses] (i.e., They went and asked at the houses of three different families).'

The numeral  $\underline{xun}$  'one' occurs without the general classifier. In construction with other classifiers it occurs as  $\underline{x}$ .

- $\frac{1}{1} \frac{1}{2} \frac{x \cdot 6 \cdot 1}{3} = \frac{4}{1} \frac{1}{5} \frac{6}{5} = \frac{2}{5} = \frac{1}{1}$  The [20ne-animal] 3(remote) 4died 5at 60nce.'
- 1k'ú 25'elan 3ti[4xp'ex] 55at6e. '1What 2 is its circumstance 3the [40ne (round thing)] 5her eye 6(remote) (i.e., How is her one eye)?' (NL080)

The numeral  $\underline{xun}$  'one' modified by the modal  $\underline{to}$  (present continuative), may occur as predicator of a clause whose subject is a Sensory (3. 10) or a Situation (4.3) clause.

- 1xûn<sub>2</sub>to [3tšitáxin 4š?élan] 5péro 6tsóts 7uk. '1One 2still [3I am playing 4is the circumstance] 5but 6it is difficult 7also (i. e., It seems to look like I'm playing but it is also difficult).' (NL029)
- $_{1}$ xûn<sub>2</sub>to  $[_{3}$ 1êk  $_{4}$ yâ?yel]. ' $_{1}$ One  $_{2}$ still  $[_{3}$ it is good  $_{4}$ it seems] (i. e. , It seems like it is good).' (NM461)
- 1xún2to [3x?6k' 4mt 55ú? 6yá?yel]. '1One 2still [3one-moment 4it is not 5it is able 6it seems] (i.e., For amoment it seems like it is not possible to do).'
  (EW007)

There are four special numerals that may occupy the Time position of a clause. They consist of the numeral stems  $\underline{t}\underline{s}\underline{a}\underline{?}$  'two' or  $\underline{?6}\underline{s}$  'three' and the classifier stems  $\underline{e}\underline{x}$  'future day' or  $\underline{x}\underline{e}$  'past day'.  $\underline{v}\underline{o}\underline{l}\underline{x}\underline{e}$  'yesterday' is probably also derived in the same way from  $\underline{v}\underline{o}\underline{l}$  'to roll into a ball'.

- 1tšibát [2tšá?ex]. 'I will go [2two-future-days] (i.e., I will go the day after tomorrow).'
- 1té 2ni?ábtex [3tšábxe]. 'It is there 2I worked [3two-past-days] (i.e., It was there (that) I worked two days ago).'
- 114 2xk'6pon [3 268xe]. '1,2 I talked to him [3three-past-days] (i.e., I talked to him three days ago).' (PP339)
- 1ni?ay 2ti3xobel [4volxe]. 1I went and returned 2to 3Las Casas [4 yesterday].

# SUBSETS OF NON-STATIVE CLAUSES

There are several subsets of clauses based on active intransitive and active transitive stems which may have an extended list of forms as normal constituents beyond those of other clauses. A few of such subsets are discussed in this chapter under the following headings:

- 1. Description Clauses
- 2. Permission Clauses
- 3. Situation Clauses
- 4. Demonstration Clauses
- 5. Capability Clauses
- 6. Aspectual Clauses
- 7. Quotation Clauses
- 4.1. Description Clauses. A DESCRIPTION CLAUSE is one of a broadly conceived class of clauses whose object constituent (if transitive) or subject constituent (if intransitive) may be a direct quotation, a conditional phrase, or a clause of one subset or another. There are several subsets of Description Clauses based on the selectional restrictions of particular verbs. Some of these are illustrated below.

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as <u>?ál</u> 'say', <u>?á?i</u> 'hear', <u>xák'</u> 'ask', <u>k'él</u> 'look', <u>nóp</u> 'think', which may take as object question clauses, active indicative clauses, quotations, and conditional phrases.

- 1tšakálbot 2[k'úsi 3tixpás]. '1I will tell you [2what 3I will do]. (NL025)
  1láx2ša 3ká?i [4?6šib 5vélta 6itľx 7ti6kampánae]. '1,3I heard 2now [7the 6bell 6 remote) 6 rang 4three 5times].' (FB008)
- is thus 4(the) 5my father-in-law 6(remote) 2,3said, [",Come 8(when) 8 in 10 fifteen 11 days], 12 he said.' (NM070)
- tšaxák'bot [2mi3láx 4avít š 5 ti6 2informe7e]. '1I will ask you [2if 3,4 you received 5the 6report 7(remote)].' (NM314)

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as <u>ná?</u> 'know', <u>?11</u> 'see', <u>k'án</u> 'want', <u>tá</u> 'find', which may take as object question clauses, independent active indicative clauses, and conditional phrases.

1md 2ma? [3k'd 4tšè?él 5tixták 6tálel]. '1It is not 2I know [3what is 4the manner 5I will send it 6coming] (i.e., I don't know how I will send it to you).' (NM177)

(F2.050)

1ikīltutik | 2itál]. '1We (excl) saw [2it come].' (OD088)
1mú 2sk'án [3mi4tstóy 5sbáik 6ti7stóxol]. '1It is not 2he wants [3if 4they raise up 5themselves 6before 7him] (i.e., He doesn't want them to go their own way).' (NL142)

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as t'šūn 'believe' which may take as object questions clauses, quotations, and independent active indicative clauses.

1 2 ák'o 2st'šúmbot [3k'úsi 4tšaválbe]. '1 Let him 2 believe you [3what it is 4you will tell him].' (NL078)

1 yú 2 un 2 tst'šúnik [3 mól4 ša 5 tštíxvan 6 stší]. '1 Because 2 they believe ["3 He is old 4 now, 5 he throws curses," 6 they said.'] (F1.046)

1 mú2 ša 3 xt'šúntik [4 2 óy 5 xtíxvanex]. '1 Not 2 now 3 we believe [4 there is 5 a curse-thrower] (i.e., We don't believe any longer in curse-throwers).'

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as <u>måla</u> 'wait for', <u>så?</u> 'look for' which may take as object question clauses or active indicative clauses.

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as <u>'6xtikin</u> 'be familiar with', <u>t'ux</u> 'choose', <u>tšól</u> 'explain', <u>méltsan</u> 'make, repair', <u>pás</u> 'do' which may take as object of the clause question clauses.

1múk 2xkóxtikin [3k'úsi 4sbf]. '1It be not 2I was familiar with [3what is 4its name] (i.e., I didn't know what his name was).' (NM012)

1 2ák'02me 3xpástutik [4k'ú 5sk'án 62v5?nton]. '1Let it 2(emphatic) 3we (ex) do [4what it is 5wants 6your heart] (i.e., May we do what you want).' (MP034)

There is a small subset of transitive verbs such as  $\underline{k}\underline{n}$  'suppose' which may take as object of the clause independent active indicative clauses.

[ ktišul] 2 xktiyoxtik. '2 We have supposed [ it is alive].' (PP258) 1 ixkty [2ti3tšák' 4tšámel]. '1 We supposed [2 that 3 it brought 4 sickness].' (F1.004)

There is a small subset of intransitive verbs such as <u>tóxob</u> 'become right' which may take as subject question clauses and independent active indicative clauses.

1mú 2šitóxob [3ti4bú 5ti6sná7e]. '1It is not 2I am enlightened [3(the) 4where is 5(the) 6his house 7(remote)] (i.e., I don't know where his house is).'
1mú 2šitóxob [3tixpás 4ti5kárta]. '1It is not 2I am enlightened [3I will make 4(the) 5letter] (i.e., I don't know how to write a letter).' (NL051)

There is a small subset of intransitive verbs such as tan 'serve' which may take as subject independent active indicative clauses, Demonstration clauses, and Conditional phrases.

1md 2 štún [3ti4 xétš 514 6 xpás 714m6e]. '1It is not 2it serves [3that 4it is thus 5,6I did 7that 8 (remote)] (i.e., It is bad that I did it that way).' (PP035)
1md 2 štún [3aví 45 61an 5 tstík' 6 sbáik7e]. '1It is not 2it serves [3you see 4the circumstance is 5 they put in 6 themselves 7 (remote)] (i.e., It is not good the way they got themselves involved in it).' (PP055)
1md 2 štún [3mi4tšixbát]. '1It is not 2it serves [3if 4we will go] (i.e., It is not good if we go).'

There is a small subset of intransitive verbs such as <u>vinax</u> 'appear' which may take as subject an independent active indicative clause.

- 1 ivinax [2ti3mu 4kušuluk]. '1It appeared [2that 3it is not 4alive].' (X2.207)
  1 ivinax [2ti3tšk'á? 4ti5te?]. '1It appeared [2that 4the 5wood 3is rotting].'
  (X2.207)
- 4.2. Permission Clauses. A PERMISSION CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on the transitive stem <u>?ák!</u> 'give'. It has a subjunctive clause or a negative clause as goal, and may itself be indicative or injunctive.
- 1lax 2yak' [3nakluk]. '1 2He permitted [(that) 3he be seated].'
  1 2ak'o [2mu 3šiyak'bun]. '1Let it be (that) [2not 3he give it to me].'
  1 tsk'an 2ti 32ak'o [4st'šumbeik 5smantal62uk]. '1They want 2(that) 3let it be [4they obey 5their commands 6also].'

An injunctive permission clause with inclusive person subject, and only a predicate constituent (viz. kák'tik), functions as an interjection of pertinacity.

[1xt'šámuntik] 2kák'tik [3anénebotš4e]. '2Come on now, [1lend me 3your nice little gourd 4(remote)].'

[1k'ú 2stú 3avú ?un] 4kák'tik. '4Come on now, [1what is 2its use 3by you] (i.e., Come on now, what use do you have for it)?'

The perfective reflexive form of <u>?ak'</u> with the same person of subject as its object clause indicates that the performance referred to by the object clause is in process.

- tkák'ox 2bá [stixtóxobtas 4yá'?un 5mú 6šóxtikin 7bú 8lék 9ti 10 ?ánts 11e]. '1, 2I am in the process [sI am guiding him 4because 5it is not 6he is familiar with 7where 8 are good 8the 10women 11(remote)] (i.e., I am in the process of guiding him because he doesn't know where the best girls are).' (NM017) 1sk'án 2 ?ép 3póšil 4yIp 5ti6 ?óra7to8 yú?un 9yák'ox 10sbá [11tsyáktsax] 12š?élan. '1He needs 2a lot of 3medicine for 4strength 5at 6once 7still 6because 9, 10he is in the process [11he is becoming weaker] 12is the appearance (i.e., He needs a lot of medicine for strength right away because it appears he is in the process of becoming weaker).' (NM534)
- 4.3. Situation Clauses. A SITUATION CLAUSE is one of a subset of clauses based on §?élan, the intransitive verb stem ?élan 'is the appearance' with third person subject. It may have an indicative clause as subject. §?élan always follows its subject when occurring as an independent clause. When embedded, §?élan may permute to a position following the predicate of the clause which is its subject. A Situation Clause is semantically and syntactically similar to a Sensory clause (3.10).
- [1t'si?ukutik 2tšixyilukutik] 35?élan. '[1We are dogs 2they see us] 3 is the appearance (i. e., It seems they treat us like dogs).' (PP094)
- [1yák'ox 25bá 3tsyáktsax] 45°élan, '[1,2He is in the process 3he is becoming weaker] 4 is the appearance (i. e., It appears that he is becoming weaker).' (NM534)
- 1aví [25?6lan 3tšismáxukutik]. '¡You see [2its appearance is 3they are hitting us] (i.e., See how they hit us).' (PP168)
- A  $\underline{?}$  elan clause may occupy the subject of a Quantitative Clause based on  $\underline{x}$  on
- 1xin2to [3tšámen4ša 5š?élan 6ti7t'sf?8e]. '1It is one 2still [3it is dead 4now 5is the appearance 6the 7dog 8(remote)] (i.e., The dog looks like it's dead).'

The difference in meaning between <u>yá?yel</u> (3.10) and <u>š?élan</u> is quite subtle. <u>š?élan</u> has reference to the prima facie visual impression given, whereas <u>yá?yel</u> has reference to non-visual impressions.

- $[1\underline{1}\underline{6}\underline{k}]_{2}\underline{8}\underline{7}\underline{6}\underline{1}\underline{n}$   $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{k}\underline{a}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{k}\underline{a}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{t}\underline{n}\underline{a}\underline{t}\underline{o}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{t}\underline{n}\underline{a}\underline{o}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{t}\underline{o}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{t}\underline{o}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{o}_{5}\underline{e}]$ .  $[3\underline{t}i_{4}\underline{o}]$ .
- 4.4. Demonstration Clauses. A DEMONSTRATION CLAUSE is one of a subset of transitive clauses based on the two transitive verb stems 211 'see', and 221 'hear', inflected with second person subject. In this construction the final consonant of the 211 stem never occurs, and the non-stressed vowels may not occur. The object of an avi clause may be a noun, a possessed noun phrase, or a clause. The object of an avi? I clause is always a clause.
- N: 1k'élo2me 3aví [4vákaš5i] 6tsvé? 7tšóbtik. '1Take care of 2(emphatic) 3you see [4 a cow 5(immediate)] 6it is eating 7the cornfield (i.e., Take care of that cow right there; it is eating the cornfield).'
- PNP: 1mi2šú? 3tšakóltaun 4aví [5yépal 6ti7kíl6e]. '1If 2can 3you help me with 4you see [5the amount of 6(the) 7my debt 6(remote)] (i.e., Can you let me have this amount on credit)?' (NM614)
- iCl:  $\frac{1}{4}$  aví  $\frac{1}{2}$  tšópo $\frac{1}{2}$  no  $\frac{2}{3}$  os  $\frac{1}{4}$  tspásik  $\frac{1}{5}$  tiekristšánoetik []. '1(You) see (it) [5 the 6people 7(immediate) 4do 3 only 2 evil].' (PP032)

iCl: 1va?i [2it'om atūk']. 'Hear it [2a gun awas fired].'

An Interrogation clause may occur as object of a Demonstration Clause.

iavi [2k'ú 3tšè?él 4láx 5kó?ntontik6e]. '1You see it [2what is 3the manner 5our
hearts 6(remote) 4 finished] (i. e., See how we finished).' (PP115)
1avá?i [2k'úsi 3tšál4e]. '1(You) hear (it) [2what it is 3he says 4(remote)].'
(AB170)

A Situation clause may occur as object of a Demonstration clause.

½ ?i [25 ?élan 3tsnópik 4xmúltik]. '¡You hear it [2its appearance is 3they are thinking up 4our sin] (i. e., Hear how they are slandering us).' (PP215)
½ [25 ?élan 3tst'šúnik4i]. '¡You see it [2its appearance is 3they believe it 4(immediate)] (i. e., See how it appears they believe it).' (PP217)

An <u>avi</u> clause may occupy a nominal position of another clause.

- In Subject: 1.26y 2te 3ti4mexiko [5 aví 6 bík'it 7 2 espéxo]. '1There are 2there 3in 4Mexico [5 you see them 6 little 7 glasses] (i.e., There are there in Mexico those little glasses).' (NM597)
- In Object: 1ba 2k'oponik [3avi 4santo5e]. '1Go (and) 2talk to [3you see it 4a saint 5 (remote)] (i. e., Go and talk to that saint).' (PP066)

- In Descriptive: 1tá2me 3 šatákbun 4tálel 5 k'éšol 6 ti7kárta [8 aví to]. '3 You send me 4 coming 5 its substitute 6 the 7 letter [8 you see it 9 still] 1 is found 2 (emphatic) (i. e., You will send me an answer to this letter).' (NM488)
- 4.5. Capability Clauses. A CAPABILITY CLAUSE is one of a subset of pseudo-passive transitive clauses. It is grammatically anomalous in two respects. First, it has a goal as subject and the agent constituent is based on the associative noun stem 1 nun as in a true transitive passive clause. Second, the verb stem—which may be intransitive or transitive—occurs with active intransitive inflection. The construction indicates capability (or if negated, lack thereof).

The stative verb stem  $\underline{x}\underline{a}$ ? has the same meaning as the Capability clause construction; viz. 'is able to'. This means that it is possible to convey this meaning either by using  $\underline{x}\underline{a}$ ? as a predicator, or by employing the capability construction. The two clauses which follow have the same meaning. (Note that  $\underline{s}\underline{a}$ ? is the timeless aspect form of  $\underline{x}\underline{a}$ ?.)

- ½½° ½ků°untutik ½tixtšántutik ¼ti5xůn6e. '(It) is able 2by us (that) 3we learn 4the 5paper 6(remote) (i.e., We can learn to read).'

  1tstšán ½ků°untutik ½ti4xůn5e. '(It) ilearns 2by us 3the 4paper 5(remote) (i.e., We can learn to read).'
- 4.6. Aspectual Clauses. There are two verb stems which interfere with a clear interpretation of the system of aspectual inflection.

The first of these is the intransitive verb stem  $\frac{14x}{1}$  'finish'. It may occur as a regular intransitive verb stem with intransitive inflection.

1nixláx 2ti3máxel. '1We were finished 2by 3beating (i.e., We were badly beat-en).'
en).'
1iláx 2ti3póšil4e. '2The 3medicine 4(remote) 1is finished.'

It also may occur preceding transitive verb stems in the manner of an auxiliary verb. As in the case of other auxiliaries, the completive aspect is realized as null before <a href="Lix">Lix</a>, and the nuclear verb of the verb phrase is subjunctive. Unlike other auxiliaries, however, when <a href="Lix">Lix</a> occurs with completive aspect, it adds no auxiliary meaning to the nuclear verb, but merely has the same meaning as a simple completive aspect form without auxiliary.

<u>láx yák'bun</u>. 'He gave it to me.' (DB013) <u>niyák'bun</u>. 'He gave it to me.'

In closely related Tzeltal, the cognate  $\underline{16}$  is the only form used to indicate completive aspect of transitive verbs.

The other case of interference in the system of aspectual inflection concerns the transitive root ta 'find'.

1tšatá 2amôton. '1You will find 2your gifts (i.e., You will receive gifts).' (VA028)
nistáun. 'He found me.'

In addition to occurring as predicator in independent clauses of the type illustrated above, the functions in limited cases as equivalent to incompletive aspect inflection. In such cases, the following conditions obtain:

- (1) ta itself is devoid of inflection acting like a stative verb stem rather than an active transitive stem.
- (2) It is the predicator of the clause, having a clause as subject whose predicator is inflected for timeless or incompletive aspect.
  - (3) tā only functions this way when modified by a modal.
- 1tá 2º03no ºoš 4tšbá 5stóx 6smúl. '(That) 4he will go 5pay for 6his misdeed 1is found 2 surely 3 precisely (i.e., He will surely go and pay for his misdeed).'

This construction adds nothing to the lexical information conveyed by the other elements but seems only to direct more attention to the modal(s). Compare the following examples:

18axná?ošuk2ša. '¡I am lonely for you 2now.'
15bá 2stóx3?o4no?oš 5smúl. '3,4Surely 1he will go (and) 2pay for 5his middeed.'

4.7. Quotation Clauses. A quotation is DIRECT or INDIRECT as defined by the occurrence of direct quotation verbs based on the two stems: tš! 'say' and út 'tell'. A direct quote is followed by a direct quotation verb; an indirect quote is not.

1láx 2káltutik [3 2út'šan 4škútutik]. '1,2We (excl) said, [3"Drink," 4we (excl) told him].'

1 láx 2 káltutik [3 tškút'štutik]. '1,2 We (excl) said (that) [3 we would drink it].'

As in the above example (and as mentioned above in 4.1), there are several verbs which may have a quotation as object. Such verbs are inflected for an object, and the quotation may be that object. This is not the case with Direct Quotation verbs.

Verbs based on  $\underline{tst}$  'say' are always intransitive and are  $\underline{not}$  in cross-reference with their quotation constituent. In the following examples, the verb  $\underline{stst}$  'he said' is intransitive. In the first example it is preceded by a subject and a quotation; in the second by a Time constituent and a quotation.

 $\frac{_1 t i_2 x \acute{u} n_3 e}{\text{said.}!} \left[ \frac{_4 k' \acute{o} k'}{_5 \& k \Pi} \right]_{6} \underbrace{\text{stsf.}} \quad \text{'_1The 2one 3(remote) (said) [']_5 I see 4 fire, "]}_{6} \text{he said.}!$ 

1k'álal 2ti3itšám4e [5mú 6ša?6k' 7mé?8e 9 tšbá 10xkúses 11tál 12ti13xtót4e] 15stší.

'1When 2he 3died 4(remote), ["5Don't 6cry, 7mother 6 (remote), 9 I'll go (and)
10bring to life 11(coming) 12(the) 13my father 14(remote), "] 15he said.'

(SM003)

In that a direct quotation may occupy a nominal position of a clause, it may also be determined by  $\underline{ti}$  'the'. In keeping with the fact that the quotation is not cross-referenced in the quotation verb, it seemingly also can be ignored in the placement of  $\underline{ti}$  and following deictic  $\underline{e}$ . Rather than flanking the entire quotation clause, these two elements may flank only the remainder of the clause, leaving the quotation outside. When the determiner  $\underline{ti}$  precedes the whole clause—including the quotation—no deictic ending occurs; when the quotation remains 'outside',  $\underline{ti}$  and  $\underline{e}$  both occur.

1láx 2yál 3[ti]4tšák' 5tšámel 6stší. '1,2He said 3[that] "4It brings 5sickness," 6he said.'

1tsai2 ?uk 3 ?ak'o 4yrt's 5stoxol 6yabtel 7[ti]6 mut'su 6ts ?abtex[10e] 11ti 12sts [13e.

'1tt says 2also" 7[The] 8 one who 9 works 10(remote) 3let him 4 receive 5 pay
for 6 his work. 11(the) 12 it says 13(remote).'

As the axis of a <u>k'alal</u>- Phrase, the entire clause may be determined and <u>e</u> may close the clause.

1k'álal [2ti3mú 4šláx 5 ti8bálumil7e 8 stší8e] 10 xétš11 2ún 12 taná 13 nítšim 14 no 20 s 15 kó 2 ntontik 18 stší. '1 When [2(the) "5The 8 world 7 (remote) 3 is not 4 coming to an end," 8 they said 9 (remote)], "11 Because of this, 10 it is thus 12 now 13 are blooming 14 precisely 15 our hearts, 18 they said (i.e., When 'The world is not coming to an end," they said, "For this reason now we are happy, "they said).' (VA016)

A direct Quotation Clause may also occupy the Conditional position of a clause. In this position the Direct Quotation clause occupies the axis of a relator phrase based on mi 'lf' which in this case—like ti—'ignores' the quotation and precedes only the remainder of the clause.

[1tši?ábtex] 2mi3tšixtší4e 5?ák'o 6k'ótuk 7ti 6pásel 8 stší 10ti11présidente 12e.

"[1"I'll work, "] 2if 3we say 4(remote), "5 let 6-8it come to pass," 10the
11president 12(remote) 8said.'

[1?ák'o 2abáik 3ti4pásel 5ti6muk'] 7mi8stší 9ti10káxvaltik11e 125°útat 18ti4pedro
15ti16juan17e. ["1Let 2yourselves 3-6be honored,"] 7if 8(the) 100ur Lord
11(remote) 8said, 12they were told 13(the) 14Peter (and) 15(the) 16John
17(remote) (i.e., Let yourselves be honored, did our Lord say to Peter
and John)?' (X1.089)

A Direct Quotation Clause may also occupy the Subject of a Negation or a Contrary-to-Fact Clause. In this position the quotation is also left 'outside'.

\[
\text{imu 2lax 8yal [4? \( \text{elk'axan 5} \) m\( \text{ilvanan} \)] \( \text{emuk 7stsi}. \]
\[
\text{'1} \) It is not 2,3 he said ["4Steal, 5kill,"] \( \text{eit} \) be not 7 he said it (i.e., He did not say, "Steal, kill.").'
\]

[1117 oy 2ti3 stóxol4e] 5táka 6tšíuk7e. '[1Here is 2the 3price of it 4(remote), ]
5if (it were) 6he would say 7(remote).'

# NOUNS AND NOUN PHRASES

In this chapter classification of nouns is discussed, followed by a description of the Descriptive Noun Phrase and the Possessed Noun Phrase. The chapter closes with a description of restricted subsets of Possessed Noun Phrases.

#### 5.1-5.4 Noun Classification

There are three classes of nouns defined by patterns of possession.

- 1. Unpossessable Nouns.
- 2. Optionally Possessed Nouns
- 3. Obligatorily Possessed Nouns
- 5.1. Unpossessable Nouns. An UNPOSSESSABLE NOUN may not occur with a pronoun as possessor. It may be simple or composite. Composite unpossessable nouns include personal names.
- 1tšapásbun [2pertón]. '1You will do me [2pardon] (i.e., You will pardon me).' (CL078)
- $_{1}$ xá?  $_{2}$ ti[ $_{3}$ tóti] $_{4}$ e]  $_{5}$ ti $_{6}$ ibát $_{7}$ e.  $_{1}$ It is that  $_{2}$ the [ $_{3}$ father  $_{4}$ (remote)]  $_{5}$ who  $_{6}$ went  $_{7}$ (remote) (i. e. , It is the father who went).'
- 1 ital 2ti[3totil-pale4e]. '2The [3head priest 4(remote)] 1came.'

(and) stell her.

- 1mi<sub>2</sub>tšamán [3tón-kášlan]. '<sub>1</sub>If <sub>2</sub>you will buy [3eggs] (i. e., Will you buy eggs)?'
  1mi<sub>2</sub>ibát <sub>3</sub>ti [4xpétul] 5avú <sup>2</sup>un<sub>6</sub>e. '<sub>1</sub>If <sub>3</sub>(the) 5your [4Peter] 6(remote) 2went
- <u>5.2. Optionally Possessed Nouns</u>. An OPTIONALLY POSSESSED NOUN may occur with or without a pronoun as possessor. It may be either simple or composite.
- 1káxal 2ti[3ká?] 4ibát. '1Mounted 2on [3a horse] 4he went.' (MC051)
  12ép 2 2išim 3isvé? 4 ská?]. '1It was much 2corn (that)[4his horse] 3ate.'
  (OD048)

- 1 vôkol 2 tstšán [3 2 ábtel]. '1(It's) with difficulty 2 they learn (how to) [3 work].'
- 126y [2kabtel]. '1There is [2my work] (i. e., I have work to do).'
- $\frac{1 \times 42}{1 \times 4} \left[\frac{1 \times -2 \text{ abteletik}}{1 \times 4}\right]$ . 'It is that: [2work-ers] (i. e., They are workers).'
- 1mi 20y [3avax- 2abtel]. '1ff 2there is [3your work-er] (i. e., Do you have any workers)?'
- 1 26y [2 2 at 's-na] 3 1 m 4 to 5 i. '1 There is [2 a new house] 3 there 4 still 5 (immediate) (i. e., There is a new house away over there).'
- $\frac{1 \text{ ixû } ?_2 \text{ sa }_3 \text{ yû } ?\text{un }_4 \text{ti} [_5 \text{yát's-na}_6 \text{e}].$   $\frac{1}{4} \text{It was able }_2 \text{already }_3 \text{by him }_4 \text{ (the) } [_5 \text{his new house }_6 \text{ (remote)}] \text{ (i. e. }, \text{ He has finished his new house).}$

An IMPERSONAL NOUN is one of a subset of optionally possessed nouns which may only occur with an impersonal possessor. An Impersonal noun is derived from an Unpossessable noun, an Optionally possessed noun, or a temporal stative stem, suffixation of Al.

- $_{1}$ xá?  $[_{2}$ stótil-al]  $_{3}$ ti $_{4}$ bálumil $_{5}$ e. ' $_{1}$ It is that:  $[_{2}$ he is the head one over]  $_{3}$ the  $_{4}$ land  $_{5}$  (remote) (i. e. , He is the one in charge of all the land).'
- 1xá? [2tôtil] 3yú?unik. 'It is that: [2he is the chief one] 3of them (i. e., He is their leader).'
- 1[lekil]-?ants 2lum3e. '(That one) 2there 3(remote) 1 is a [good] woman.'
  1mi2ti[3lekil-al] 4lax 5yal. '1 If 2 with [3goodness]4, 5 he said it (i. e., Was it of his own free will he said it)?'
- 5.3. Obligatorily Possessed Nouns. An OBLIGATORILY POSSESSED NOUN must always occur with a pronoun as possessor. It may be simple or composite.
- $\frac{116x}{2}$  smfl  $\frac{3}{4}$  sbánkil  $\frac{5}{6}$ .  $\frac{1}{1}$ ,  $\frac{2}{1}$  He killed  $\frac{3}{6}$  (the) [4his brother  $\frac{5}{6}$  (remote)].
- 1xá? [2smóton] 3ti4kampána5e. '1It is that: 3the 4 bell's 5(remote) [2gift].'
  (FB018)
- 12at's2to sti[4at'sak-t'sut5e]. '3(The) [4your tie-abdomen (i.e. girdle) 5(remote)] is new 2still.'
- $_1$ ip'ax  $[_2$ spis-xol]. '[2His wrap-head (i. e. hat)]  $_1$ dropped.' (PP096)

An UNPOSSESSABLE NOUN may be derived from an Obligatorily Possessed Noun by suffixation of  $\underline{11}$ .

- 11ax 2yak' 3nakluk 4ti 5bankil-al 6e. '1,2He let 3be seated 4the 5eldest brother 6(remote).'
- $\frac{1it\tilde{s}\tilde{a}m_2\tilde{s}a_3ti}{(SM045)}$   $\frac{1}{4}$   $\frac{x\tilde{b}\tilde{a}nkil}{5}e$ . '3(The)  $\frac{1}{4}$  my brother  $\frac{1}{5}$  (remote)  $\frac{1}{4}$  died  $\frac{1}{2}$  already.'

- 1tšák' 2ti[3môton-il] 4sták'in. '1He gives 2as [3a gift] 4his money (i.e., He gives away his money).'
- 14šbá 2yák'beik [3smóton]. '1will go 2they give him [3his gift] (i.e., They are going to go and give him a gift).' (VA021)
- 1t'úxum 2ti[3ná]4e. '2The [3house]4 (remote) is pretty.' (NM328)
- $11112 \times 113 \times 11$

1tspas [2nail]-? isim. '1He is making 2a corn-[house].'
1tststk'ik [2pom]. '1They are burning [1incense].'

- 1mi<sub>2</sub>avit'šox stál [4apóm]. '1If 2you have brought 3coming [4your incense] (i. e., Have you brought the incense you are going to use)?'
- 1bá 2 sló ?ik 3ti[4 spómal] 5ti6kólomen7e. '¡Went 2 they eat 3(the) [4its incense] 5the 8 bees 7(remote) (i.e., They went and ate the bees' honey).' (SM023)
- 5.4. Classification of Nouns by Distribution. Several subsets of nouns may be defined on the basis of their distribution in phrases and clauses. Of these, those subsets of possessed nouns which define possessed noun phrases with special distribution are discussed below in 5.7-5.12. In addition, two subsets of nouns are here defined, REFLEXIVE and VOCATIVE nouns.

A REFLEXIVE NOUN is an obligatorily possessed noun based on the stem ba. It occupies a position in the nucleus of the Verb Phrase (2.7).

ik'únk'un 2līk 3xtâm [4xbâ]. 'It is slowly 3began 3I pick up [4myself] (i.e., I slowly gained strength).' (OD112)
itsk'ôpon [2sbâik]. 'IThey talk to [2themselves] (i.e., They talk to each other).' (VA017)

A VOCATIVE NOUN is one which may occupy the Vocative Position of a clause. It may be unpossessable, optionally possessed, or obligatorily possessed.

- 1XÁYİDOĞUK 2NATÁLİK [3MÉ?4e] [5tót6e] 7LÁ?İK 626K'OM. '(The) 1how many of you 2you came [3mother 4(remote)], [5father 6(remote)] 7come 8tomorrow (i.e., The number of you that came, mothers, fathers, come tomorrow).' (X1,201)
- 1 2 altik 2 and 2 unstal [4 kerem]. '1 It is in vain (that) 2 you remembered me 3 coming [4 boy] (i.e., It's in vain you thought of coming to me, boy).'
  (AB127)
- 126tšan 2tál [3xbánkil]. '1Enter 2coming, [3my elder brother].' (AB198)

### 5.5-5.6 Noun Phrase Structure

5.5. Descriptive Noun Phrases. A DESCRIPTIVE NOUN PHRASE consists of two coordinate constituents; an APPELLATIVE constituent, and a DESCRIPTIVE constituent. They are considered coordinate (and appositive)

rather than attributive (i.e. a head with modifiers) because either constituent may occur independent of the other, and both have the same semantic referent. Though the relative order of the constituents is fixed, either of the two, or both, may occur in a nominal position.

# Appellative alone:

### Descriptive alone:

1mú 2sk'án 3šák' 4ti5mól 6xmikel7e [8té 8 ti10yólon 11témplo12e]. 'It is not 2he wants 3he gives it 4(the) 5Old 8Mike 7(remote) [8 it is there 8,10 below (the) 11church 12(remote)] (i.e., Old Mike doesn't want to give (the piece of land) there below the church).' (NM582)

 $_{1}$ xá?  $_{2}$ tst'úxik  $[_{3}$ ti $_{4}$ bú  $_{5}$ mól $_{8}$ ša $_{7}$ e]. ' $_{1}$ It is that:  $_{2}$ they choose  $[_{3}$ (the)  $_{4}$ where  $_{5}$ he is old  $_{8}$ already  $_{7}$ (remote)] (i.e., It's that they choose one who is old).' (SD024)

# Appellative plus Descriptive:

The appellative may be a NOUN or a POSSESSED NOUN PHRASE.

1ip'áx [2tisté? 6]. '[2The stree 4(remote)] 1fell.' (SM029)
1láx 2spásik [3k'in]. '1,2They made [3a fiesta].' (FB012)
1tál 2stik' [3sk'6b 4ti5b6lom6e]. '1Came 2he put it in [3his paw 4the 5tiger 6(remote)] (i.e., The tiger came and stuck his paw in).' (NT006)
1tškák'be [2xkantélatik]. '1We give to it [2our candles].' (PP263)

The descriptive may be a CLAUSE or a ti-PHRASE. The Clause may or may not be determined.

11tk 2sméltsan 3ti4bá5e [6xá? 7ti8tšvé? 3ti10yút 111úm]. '1Began 2he made it 3the 4mole 5 (remote) [8t is that 7that 8 eats 3.10 inside (the) 11 ground] (i.e., He then made the mole, it that eats inside the ground).' (SM027)

 $_{1}$ sa?bun  $_{2}$ talel  $_{3}$ k'exox  $[_{4}$ ti $_{5}$ kastiva]  $[_{6}$ ti $_{7}$ bû  $_{8}$ lek $_{9}$ e]. ' $_{1}$ Look for me  $_{2}$ coming  $_{3}$ a song  $[_{4}$ in  $_{5}$ Spanish]  $[_{6}$ (the)  $_{7}$ where  $_{8}$ it is good  $_{8}$ (remote)] (i.e., Bring me a song in Spanish that is good).' (NM622)

An appellative noun is in cross-reference with the following descriptive clause as one of its nominal referents. Two examples follow in which the noun is (first) the agent and (second) the goal of the descriptive clause.

1nftšim2no?oš 3ko?ntontutik 4xkotoltutik 5stši?uk [6ti7mariána 8ti8tálem 10lf?
11to]. '1A flower 2precisely 3our (ex) hearts 4all of us (ex) 5 along with
[6the) 7Marion 8who 8 has come 10 here 11still] (i.e., We (ex.) are all happy including Marion who has come here).' (MS050)

1 láx2 sa 3kľt's [4ti5akárta6e 7ti8láx 8aták 10talél 11ti12kuátro 13noviémbre]. '1,3 I received 2now [4(the) 5your letter 6(remote) 7that 8, 8you sent 10coming 110n (the) 124th (of) 13November].' (NM538)

The DESCRIPTIVE NOUN PHRASE may occupy a nominal position of a clause and may (or may not) be determined.

Subject: [1ti2ták'in 3tixtsóbtutik] 4xá? 5ti6spasáxe 7ti8mút'šu 8tštál 10e. '[1The 2money 2we will gather] 4it is that: 5the 6fare of 7the 8one 8who will come 10(remote).' (NM162)

Subject: 1<u>itšám [2ti3vákaš 4ti5láx 8smán 7vólxe]</u>. '[2The 3cow 4that 5,8he bought 7yesterday] 1died.'

Object:  $_1mi_2ik'ot$  [ $_3ti_4karta_5e_8ti_7la_8xtak_9talel_{10}e$ ].  $_1If_2it$  arrived [ $_3the_4let_5(remote)_8that_{7,8}I$  sent  $_8coming_{10}(remote)$ ] (i. e., Did the letter that I sent arrive)? (NM472)

Object: 1 láx 2 křt' 3 stál [4ti5 xún 6ti7 láx 8 ak 'ámbunge]. '1,2 I brought 3 coming [4the 5 paper 8 that 7.8 you asked me for 8 (remote)].'

5.6. Possessed Noun Phrases. A POSSESSED NOUN PHRASE consists of an ITEM followed by a POSSESSOR. The Item may be a POSSESSED or an UNPOSSESSED NOUN.

When the Item is a Possessed Noun, the Possessor may be a Noun, a Noun Phrase, or a Clause. A Clause in this position may (or may not) be determined.

1p6 ?ot, ša stš?án [4y61 5xtšſtom]. 'It is soon 2already 3will be born [4her off-spring 5my pig] (i.e., My pig will soon have her litter).' (NM616)

1tšaxk'ámbot 2v6kol 3stšſ?uk [4sk6tol 5ti6xvſniktak7e 8ti9k'ú 10yépal 11xk6x12e].

11 ask of you 2trouble 3along with [4all 6the) 6my men 7(remote) 8 (the)

9 what is 10 their muchness (on) 11my account 12(remote)] (i.e., I ask help of you along with all my men, the number of them that are at my command).' (CL015)

1mû 2xêtšuk [3sxâm 4ti5lá 6xt'síbabot7e]. 'It is not 2be it thus [3its meaning 4the 5,6I wrote to you 7(remote)] (i.e., That was not the meaning of what I wrote to you).' (NM164)

The provision that the Possessor may itself be a Possessed Noun Phrase theoretically allows for infinite recursion. In practice, no more than one or two embeddings of Possessed Noun Phrases as Possessor is common.

 $\frac{1}{6}$  (remote)  $\frac{1}{3}$  blouse]  $\frac{1}{1}$  is pretty.' (The)  $\frac{1}{2}$  embroidery (on) [4(the)  $\frac{1}{5}$  Manuela's

1sk'an 2sméltsambel [3smákte? 4ti5pále6e]. '1He wants 2its being made for him [3his fence 4the 5priest 6(remote)] (i.e., The priest wants a fence made for him).' (PP440)

When the Item is an Unpossessed Noun, the Possessor is either an AS-SOCIATIVE NOUN or an ASSOCIATIVE NOUN PHRASE. The Associative Noun is a Possessed Noun based on 12un, and an Associative Noun Phrase is a subset of Possessed Noun Phrases having an Associative Noun as Item.

1ti<sub>2</sub>?iskuėla [3kū?untutik] 4lf?<sub>5</sub>to 6ti<sub>7</sub>?fspitor [8avū?un]<sub>8</sub>e 10lėk 11snå? 12tšálbe 13måntal 14ti<sub>15</sub>måystro [16avū?un]<sub>17</sub>e. '1At [30ur]<sub>2</sub>school 4here 5still 6(the) [8your] 7inspector 9(remote) 10well 11knows how 12he says to him 13commands 14(the) [16your] 15teacher 17(remote) (i.e., Your inspector really knows how to command your teacher at our school here).' (CL052) 1lå 2xtšón 3ti4límeton [5yū?un 6ti7póš6e]. '1,2I sold 3the 4large decanters [50f 6the 7liquor 8(remote)] (i.e., I sold the large liquor bottles).' (F2.167)

The Possessor agrees in person with the pronoun prefix of a Possessed Noun occupying the Item position. Since the Possessor is a Noun, a Noun Phrase, or a Clause, the pronoun prefix of the noun in the Item position is almost always the third person pronoun. The two exceptions to this are when the Possessor is either a TOTALITY PHRASE (5.8) or an ATTENTION CLAUSE (3.3). It is the POSSESSOR of a Totality Phrase, or the SUBJECT of an Attention Clause which is in cross-reference with the pronoun in the Item position rather than the phrase or clause as a whole.

1xá? [2xták'in 3xtúk]. '1It is that: [2it's my money 3my aloneness] (i.e., It is my money alone).'

tixk'antutik 2 vokol 3ti 4 atoxol 5 xo ot 6 ti 70 8 avabte 6. '1 We are asking 2 trouble 3 in 4 your presence 5 it is you: 6 the 7 there is 8 your official position 9 (remote) (i.e., We are asking help of you who have an official position).' (CL040)

### 5.7-5.12 Subsets of Possessed Noun Phrases

Two subsets of possessed noun phrases have already been introduced, ASSOCIATIVE and TOTALITY phrases. In addition to these, ACCOMPANIMENT, CAUSATIVE, LOCATIVE and TEMPORAL noun phrases are discussed below.

5.7. Associative Noun Phrases. The ASSOCIATIVE NOUN PHRASE is based on the obligatorily possessed stem 1.2un, and must be present in the possessor position with an unpossessed noun, as mentioned above. It may also occupy three other positions.

In a passive clause, the goal of the predicator is the subject of the clause, and the agent of the predicator is out of focus, but the agent may be introduced obliquely by an Associative Noun Phrase.

 $_1\underline{m}\underline{u}$   $_2\underline{l}\underline{e}\underline{k}\underline{u}$   $_3\underline{i}$   $_7\underline{f}\underline{l}\underline{a}$   $_5\underline{t}\underline{i}_3\underline{s}\underline{b}\underline{a}\underline{n}\underline{k}\underline{l}_7\underline{e}]$ .  $_1^I\underline{l}$  is not  $_2\underline{i}\underline{t}$  be good  $_3\underline{h}\underline{e}$  was seen  $_4\underline{b}\underline{v}$   $_5(\underline{t}\underline{h}\underline{e})$   $_6\underline{h}\underline{i}\underline{s}$   $_6\underline{h}\underline{i}\underline{s}$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{m}\underline{o}\underline{t}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{m}\underline{o}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{o}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e}\underline{o})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e}\underline{o})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{r}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{e}\underline{e})$   $_7(\underline{e}$ 

1mi2itšápax [3avú?unik]. '1ff 2it was arranged [3by you] (i.e., Was it settled by you)?'

 $_{1}$ k'űšubbil  $_{2}$ yű'un  $_{3}$ ti $_{4}$ stót $_{5}$ e].  $_{1}$ He was loved  $_{2}$ by  $_{3}$ (the)  $_{4}$ his father  $_{5}$ (remote)].  $_{1}$ (AJ002)

The Associative noun phrase may occupy the Purpose Position of a clause.

1md 25d? 3tšaxk'óponot 4?ép [5yû?un 65tál, ša 8ti8 mút'šu 10tšít'š 11bátel 12ti
13kárta 4 e]. '1It is not 2it is able 3I will talk to you 4 much [5 because 6 he
is coming 7 now 8 the 8 one who 10 will take 11 going 12 the 13 letter 14 (remote)]
(i. e., I am not able to tell you much because the one who is going to take
the letter is now coming).' (NM189)

1k'úšik 2ti3sbá 4k'ób5e [6yú vun 7 2ép 8 lá 3 xót'silan]. '1They hurt 2the 3tops of 4 my hands 5 (remote) [6because 7 much 8,8 I scratched them] (i.e., The backs of my hands hurt because I scratched them a lot).' (NL028)

A Question Clause based on <u>k'ú</u> 'what' may have an Associative Noun Phrase as Subject directing the question to the cause of an event. In this construction <u>ú'un</u> receives phrase stress on its final syllable. The grammatical significance of this, if any, is not clear.

 $_{1}k'_{1}(2)$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{4}$   $_{5}$   $_{5}$   $_{4}$   $_{5}$   $_{5}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{4}$   $_{5}$   $_{5}$   $_{5}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{1}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{4}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{4}$   $_{4}$   $_{2}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{3}$   $_{4}$ 

 $_{1}\underline{k't}$  [ $_{2}\underline{yu}$ ? $_{1}\underline{v}$ ].  $_{1}\underline{v}$ What is [ $_{2}$ its cause  $_{3}$ he will sell it] (i.e., Why is he selling it)?'

The Associative Noun yû?un may also occupy the Conditional Position of a Manner Clause based on xêtš 'thus' (3.4). In this case, only the noun occurs without a possessor constituent following. As in the case mentioned immediately above, <u>û?un</u> receives phrase stress on its final syllable when occupying this position. In this case, however, the occurrence of phrase stress may have grammatical significance, since it is <u>not</u> what follows that is in grammatical construction with it. Following xétš, yû?un has reference to a preceding form, and is comparable to English 'therefore'.

- 1púro 2sák?obal 3tšá?yik. [4xétš 5 yù?ún] 6láx 7kft'š 8múl. '1Simply 2white-cough 3they feel. [5Because of this, 4it is thus (that)] 6,7I received 6fault (i.e., It is simply tuberculosis they are suffering from. Therefore I was sad).' (NM425)
- 1muk 257ak'bat [3xets 4yù?un] 5171111. '1It be not 2he was given it [4because of this 3it is thus (that)] 5he became angry) (i.e., He was not given it so he became angry).' (SM026)
- 5.8. Totality Noun Phrases. A TOTALITY NOUN PHRASE is one of a subset of Possessed Noun Phrases based on two obligatorily possessed noun stems, kótol 'all' and ták 'alone'. Unlike other possessed nouns whose pronoun agrees with a following Possessor, the possessor of a totality noun agrees in person and number with the possessed noun in the item position of the Phrase.
- inftSim2no?os 3k6?ntontutik [4xk6toltutik]. '2Simply 1 are a flower 3 our (ex)
  hearts (of) [4all (of us (ex.))] (i.e., We (ex) are all happy).' (MS050)
  1mu 2ti3sventauk [4stukik]. '1It's not 2 by 3 their good cause [4 they alone] (i.e.,
  It's not on their account alone).' (X1.098)
- 5.9. Accompaniment Noun Phrases, An ACCOMPANIMENT NOUN PHRASE is one of a subset based on the obligatorily possessed noun stem tši?uk. In certain cases, the Accompaniment Noun Phrase could be interpreted as occupying an association position of a clause. An example of such a clause is lekto ?6yun x6?oni stši?uk kāxnil stši?uk xnīt!šnab 'I am still fine, I along with my wife and my children, '(NM438) where the subject of the clause is x6?oni, and the verb is unmarked for plural which would seem to indicate that stši?uk kāxnil stši?uk xnīt!šnab is an association constituent and not part of the subject.

Such an interpretation is not sure, however, since it is not absolutely necessary to mark the verb for a plural subject when the subject is known to be plural. In other cases, the accompaniment noun phrase is obviously an

appositive to another noun phrase both of which occupy together a nominal position of their clause. Examples of this are:

1 ?ép 2ti3tšámel 4tšká?itutik [5stší?uk 6kól 7xnít'šon]. '(It's) 1much 2the 3sickness 4we (excl) feel [5along with 6, 7our children].' (NM503)
1tšákálbot 2ti3lék 4nik'ótutik 5ti6méxiko [7stší?uk 8ti3xmártin10e]. '1I will tell you 2that 3fine 4we (excl) arrived 5in 6Mexico City [7along with 8 (the) 8Martin 10 (remote)] (i.e., I will tell you that Martin and I arrived O.K. in Mexico City).' (NL112)

Since the accompaniment noun phrase is often clearly in this kind of apposition and can in the previously mentioned cases also be so interpreted, it seems best to consider it to function as an appositive in all cases.

- 5.10. Causative Noun Phrases. A CAUSATIVE NOUN PHRASE is one based on one of two causative nouns, kóx and vénta. They differ in their connotation; kóx implying that the cause is evil, and vénta that it is good. vénta comes from Spanish cuénta. A Causative noun phrase occupies the purpose-cause position of a clause. It differs from the Associative noun phrase in this position in that the latter is connotatively neutral (5.7).
- 12úts 25báik [35kóx 4ti5mú 65t'5ún 7ti8amántale]. '1Poor 2them [3its bad cause is 4 (the) 5 not 6they obey 7(the) 6your commands 6 (remote)] (i.e., They are in a bad way because they don't obey your commands).' (MP066)
  1nip'[xub [2ti35vénta 4ti5máystro6e]. '1I became wise [2(the) 3its good cause 4the 5teacher 6 (remote)] (i.e., I got educated on account of the teacher).'

A <u>vénta</u> phrase may also occur as subject of a Question clause based on <u>k'úsi</u> 'what', but in this position <u>vénta</u> requires the impersonal suffix <u>Al</u> (10.8).

- | Line | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2 | 1/2
- 5.11. Locative Noun Phrases. A LOCATIVE NOUN PHRASE is one of a subset based on locative nouns of which there are eight:

yút 'its insideness (i.e. inside)'
sbá 'its firstness (i.e. on top, at the beginning)'
yólon 'its belowness (i.e. below)'
sxól 'its head (i.e. at the top)'

yók 'its foot (i.e. at the foot)'
spát 'its back (i.e. at the back, outside)'
šókon 'its side (i.e. beside)'
stóxol 'its straightness (i.e. in front, before)'

A Locative Noun Phrase occupies the axis of a Locative Phrase based on the relator ti.

 $\frac{115 \times 6?}{116} \left[\frac{113}{2} \times \frac{100}{1}\right]. \quad \text{`1It eats } \left[\frac{1}{2}, \text{3inside 4(the) ground}\right]. \quad \text{(SM027)}$   $\frac{116}{11} \left[\frac{113}{2} \times \frac{113}{2} \times \frac{113}{2}\right]. \quad \text{`1,2I wrote it 3it is there } \left[\frac{1}{4}, \text{5at the beginning of it}\right]. \quad \text{`NM010)}$ 

 $_{1}$ té  $_{2}$ tšaxmálaot  $[_{3}$ ti $_{4}$ yólon  $_{5}$ víts].  $_{1}$ It is there we will wait for you  $[_{3,4}$  below  $_{5}$ (the) hill].' (F2.139)

126y 2t'sayil 3tslok' [4ti5sxol 6ti7vitsee]. 'iThere is 2smoke 3(it is) coming out [4,5at the top of 6(the) 7mountain 8 (remote)].'

1te 2nakai [3ti4yok yvits]. '1it is there 2he lives [3,4 at the foot of 5a mountain].' 1te 2tsmalavan [3ti4spat 5ana]. '1It is there 2he is waiting [3,4 outside 5your house].'

1te 2 stsóbox sbáik [4ti556kon 6t'súlna7i]. 'It is there 2they have gathered 8themselves [4. 5beside 6(the) church 7(immediate)].'

- 1tixkexan 2xbatik [3ti4stoxol 5ti6krus7e3ti 3vits10e]. '1We make kneel 2ourselves [3,4 before 5the 6cross 7(remote) 3the 3mountain 10(remote)] (i.e., We kneel before the cross and the mountain).' (F2.037)
- 5.12. Temporal Noun Phrases. A TEMPORAL NOUN PHRASE is one of a subset based on impersonal nouns derived from Temporal Stative stems or Numerals. In the case of the nominalized numeral, its Possessor is a temporal noun. The Temporal Noun Phrase may occupy the Time position of a clause.
- 1xétš 2yù 7ûn [3sxûnul 4k'ák'al] 5mu 6šk'ópox. '2Because of this, 1it is thus (that) [3its oneness 4a day] 5it is not 6he talks (i.e., Therefore he doesn't talk all day long).' (NM241)
- 1k'álal 2mi3méltsaxem4e [5 stšíbal8to 7k'ák'al] 3tšbát. '(It's) 1when 2if 3it is made 4(remote), [5 its secondness 8 still 7a day] 3 they go (i.e., When it has been made, it's still the second day that they go).' (SD010)

There is a subset of Temporal Noun Phrases which always occupies the axis of a Temporal relator phrase based on <u>ti</u>. Members of this subset are based on either nominalized numerals or nominalized stative stems.

1itál 2ti[3yók'omal]. '1He came 2on (the) [3morrow].'
1ik'ót 2ti3pásel 4ti[5svólxeal]. '1It arrived 2by 3being done 4on [5its yesterday]
(i.e., It happened the day before).'

1itál 2ti[3yók'omal]. '1He came 2on (the) [3morrow].'

2by 3being done 4on [5its yesterday]

(i.e., It happened the day before).'

1itál 2ti[3yók'omal]. '1He came 2on (the) [3morrow].'

1itál 2ti[3yók'omal]. '1He came

iilax 2ti3mflel 4ti[5stša?exal] 6ti7mero 8sk'ak'alil 3ti40k'fn41e. '4He was finished 2by 3killing 4on [5its two-future-days] 6the 7true 8day of 3the 40flesta 41(remote) (i.e., He was killed two days after the main day of the fiesta).'

#### 5.13. Possessed Nouns as Predicators.

A Possessed Noun Phrase occasionally may occur as an independent sentence or as subject of a negation clause, with its Item constituent interpreted as a predicator. Witness the following examples where the possessed noun may be modified by a modal or inflected for subjunctive mode like a verb.

[1ya?un] 2kašul. '[(It's) 1because] 2it is alive.' (X1.138)

[1yû?un2van] stšiyākub 4xêtš 5yù?ûn 6ixāt. '[2Probably (it's) 1because] sI am drunk, 5because of this, 4it is thus (that) 6it tore (i.e., It's probably because I'm drunk that it tore).' (NM320)

1mu [2yu?unuk] 3pleito 4 tixpastik 5stši?uk. '1It is not [2it be because] 3fighting we are doing 5with them (i.e., It is not that we are fighting with them).' (F2.194)

1x4? [2stšī?uk] 3ti4xūras5e. 'It is that: [2they are with him] 3(the) 4Judas 5(remote) (i.e., It is they along with Judas).' (X2.140)

1té [2xtš[?uktik]; ?o4no?oš 5péro 6mûk 7škfltik 8bû 6ibát. '1it is there [3we were with him] 3(conclusive) 4precisely 5but 6it be not 7we saw 6where 6he went (i.e., We were right there with him but we didn't see where he went).'

[1spat] 2tisbu 4 lax 5 yit's e. '[(It's) ihis back] 2(the) 3where 4, 5he received it e(remote) (i. e., It's his back where he got hurt).'

[1skox] 2ti3mu 4527 5ti6ak'ope. '[1Its bad cause is] 2that 3it is not 4 he hears 5(the) 6your words 7(remote) (i.e., It's because he doesn't hear you).'
(MP067)

## NOMINAL INFLECTION

There are four sets of inflectional forms which are nominal:

- 1. Pronouns
- 2. Plural
- 3. The Determiner ti
- 4. Deictic endings
- 6.1. Pronouns. There are four persons in Huixtec-first, second, inclusive, and third-and a morpheme for each-FIRST, SECOND, INCL, and THIRD. These morphemes indicate the agent, goal, or referent of a verb, or the possessor of a noun.

As indicated above (2.2), there are three pronoun positions in the verb phrase. These positions are defined to account for differences of (1) pronominal reference, and (2) morphophonemic realization. The pronominal position which precedes the noun stem of a possessed noun is equivalent to position two (PN²) of the verb phrase nucleus in respect to the morphophonemic realizations of pronouns. In the following paragraphs, the distribution of pronouns in respect to their grammatical reference is discussed first, followed by a description of their morphophonemic realizations.

A pronoun occupies Position One (PN¹) of the verb phrase nucleus of an indicative, nonperfective verb if it is (1) the agent of an intransitive verb, (2) the goal of a nonreflexive transitive verb, or (3) the referent of a referential verb.

COMPL-[FIRST]-xóyp'ix '[I] turned around, 'n-[i]-xóyp'ix, nixóyp'ix, INCOMPL-[FIRST]-THIRD-kólta-FIRST 'he helps [me], 'tš-[i]-y-kólta-un, tšiskóltaun.

INCOMPL-[FIRST]-THIRD-pox-REF-FIRST 'he is taking it away from [me],' tš-[i]-y-pox-be-un, tšispoxbøun, tšispoxbun.

A pronoun occupies Position Two (PN²) of the verb phrase nucleus if it is the Agent of an Active Transitive or Active Referential Verb. A pronoun occupies Position Two of the possessed noun if it is the possessor of the noun. If a transitive verb is reflexive, position two is occupied twice—preceding the verb stem and the reflexive noun.

INCOMPL-THIRD-[FIRST]-?áventa-THIRD '[I] will resow it,' tš-\$\omega\_(\kappa)-?á-venta-\$\omega\_t\text{tkfaventa}, t\text{tkfaventa}.

INCOMPL-SECOND-[FIRST]-?ál-REF-SECOND '[I] will tell it to you, '

tš-a-[k]-?ál-be-ot, tšak@álb@ot, tšakálbot.

[FIRST]-?fl '[my] debt,' [k]-?fl, k@fl, kfl.

INCOMPL-[THIRD]-kôlta-[THIRD]-bâ-PL '[they] are helping each other,'

tš-[y]-kôlta-[y]-bâ-Uk, tøskôltasbáik, tskôlta sbáik.

A pronoun occupies Position Three (PN³) of the verb phrase nucleus of an indicative, nonperfective verb if it is the goal of an active nonreflexive transitive verb, or the referent of an active referential verb. In these cases the person of goal or referent is marked redundantly in both PN¹ and PN³.

COMPL-FIRST-THIRD-?[1-[FIRST] 'he saw [me],' n-i-y-?[1-[un], niy@flun, niyflun.

INCOMPL-SECOND-THIRD-?ak'-REF-[SECOND] 'he will give it to [you],'

tš-a-y-?ak'-be-[ot], tšay@ak'b@ot, tšay@ak'bot.

If the verb is subjunctive, imperative, or perfective, a pronoun occupies Position Three as the agent of an active intransitive verb, goal of a transitive or stative intransitive verb, or the referent of a referential verb.

yál-IMPV-[SECOND] 'get down [(you sg.)]! 'yál-o-[an], yálýan, yálan.
tál-PERF-[SECOND] '[you] have come,' tál-em-[ot], tálemot.
COMPL-tál-THIRD-?ik'-SUBJN-[FIRST] 'He came and called [me],' \$\beta\$-tály-?ik'-\$\beta\$-[un], tály\$ik'un, tál yik'un.
kólta-IMPV-[FIRST] 'help [me]! 'kólta-o-[un], kólta\$\psi\$un, kóltaun.
THIRD-máx-PERF-[SECOND] 'he has hit [you],' y-máx-ox-[ot], smáxoxot.
nák-PERF-PASS-[FIRST] '[I] am seated,' nák-\$\beta\$-Rl-[un], nákalun.
nát-PERF-PASS-[FIRST] '[I] am tall, 'nát-\$\beta\$-\$\beta\$-[un], nátun.
vinik-PERF-PASS-SUBJN-[FIRST] '[I] were a man,' vinik-\$\beta\$-\$\beta\$-uk-[un],
vinikukun.
pás-REF-IMPV-[FIRST] 'do it for [me],' pás-be-o-[un], pásb\$\beta\$un, pásbun.
THIRD-mán-PERF-REF-[SECOND] 'he has bought it for [you], 's-mán-ox-be-[ot], smánoxb\$\beta\$ot, smánoxb\$\beta\$ot, smánoxb\$\text{ot}.

With two exceptions, the morphophonemic realization of the four pronouns in each of the three pronoun positions is as indicated in the following Table.

|         | PN¹ | PN <sup>2</sup> | PN <sup>3</sup> |
|---------|-----|-----------------|-----------------|
| FIRST:  | i   | k               | un              |
| SECOND: | a   | av              | ot              |
| INCL:   | ix  | k               | ø               |
| THIRD:  | ø   | y               | ø               |

The exceptions are in respect to <u>SECOND</u>, which (1) if occupying PN<sup>2</sup> of an imperative verb is realized as the null element, and (2) if occupying PN<sup>1</sup> of an intransitive verb which is imperative or subjunctive it is realized as <u>an</u>. Examples follow of each of the pronouns in each of their environments.

INCOMPL-[FIRST]-THIRD-tšúk-[FIRST] 'He is tying me,' tš-[i]-y-tšúk-[un], tšistšúkun.

COMPL-THIRD-[FIRST]-fl-THIRD-PL 'we (excl) saw it,', i-\(\ell\_{-}\) \(\begin{align\*} -\) \(\ell\_{-}\) \(\ell\_

yál-PERF-[FIRST] 'I have descended,' yál-em-[un], yálemun.

INCOMPL-SECOND]-THIRD-laban-[SECOND] 'they will deride you,' ts-[a]-y-laban-[ot], tsaslabanot.

INCOMPL-THIRD-[SECOND]-?ik'-THIRD 'you will take him,'  $t\bar{s}-\beta-[av]$ -?ik'- $\beta$ ,  $t\bar{s}av\beta ik'$ ,  $t\bar{s}av\beta ik'$ .

[SECOND]-man-REF-IMPV-FIRST 'Buy it for me! ' [6]-man-be-o-un, mam-b66un, mambun.

lik-IMPV-[SECOND] 'Arise!' lik-o-[an], likan.

INCOMPL-[INCL]-THIRD-?ák'-REF-[INCL]-PL 'he will give it to us (incl),'

tš-[ix]-y-?ák'-be-[Ø]-ukutik, tšixyØák'bØukutik, tšixyák'bukutik,

láx-THIRD-[INCL]-ná?-PL-THIRD 'we (incl) remembered, 'láx-Ø-[k]-ná?-tik-Ø, láx@ná?tik, láx ná?tik.

2 abtex-PERF-[INCL]-PL 'we (incl) have worked, ' 2 abtex-em-[8]-ukutik, 2 abtexemukutik.

INCOMPL-bat-[THIRD]-[THIRD]-?4?i-[THIRD] 'he is going to go and hear it.' tš-ba-[0]-[v]-?4?i-[0], tšbav64?i, tšba v4?i.

it, ' $t\underline{s}$ - $b\underline{a}$ - $[\emptyset]$ -[y]- $2\underline{a}^2\underline{i}$ - $[\emptyset]$ ,  $t\underline{s}b\underline{a}y\emptyset\underline{a}^2\underline{i}$ ,  $t\underline{s}b\underline{a}y\underline{a}^2\underline{i}$ .

[THIRD]- $2\underline{a}bt\underline{e}$ l'his work, '[y]- $2\underline{a}bt\underline{e}$ l,  $y\emptyset\underline{a}bt\underline{e}$ l,  $y\underline{a}bt\underline{e}$ l.

SECOND-k'6pon-IMPV-[THIRD] 'Talk to him,' \$\mathre{\gamma} \cdot \k'6pon-o-[\varkappi], k'6pono.

- 6.2. Plural. The morpheme PLURAL may modify a noun or a pronoun. Along with possession, the occurrence of PLURAL is a defining characteristic which distinguishes noun stems from stative stems. There are eight morphophonemic realizations of PLURAL; four which indicate plurality of pronouns—tutik, tik, ukutik, Uk,—and four which indicate plurality of nouns—etik, tak, ab, and Votak. They may occupy one of two positions in the nucleus of the verb phrase (2.2), or a position immediately following a noun. The distribution of PLURAL is defined as follows.
- (1) It may occupy Plural Position Two (PL<sup>2</sup>) of a transitive or referential verb to indicate plurality of the agent.

láx kti[tutik]ot 'We (excl) saw you (sg.)'
láx avti[uk]un 'you (pl) saw me'
lá xmáx bá[tutik] 'we (excl) hit ourselves'

(2) It may occupy Position One (PL<sup>1</sup>) of a nonreflexive verb nucleus, to indicate plurality of (a) the agent of an intransitive verb, (b) the goal of a transitive verb, or (c) the referent of a referential verb.

tšixkóm[ukutik] 'we (incl) will stay'
tškóm[ik] 'they will stay'
láx klloš[uk] 'I saw you (pl)
láx kll[ik] 'I saw them'
lá xpásboš[uk] 'I did it for you (pl)'
lá xpásbe[ik] 'I did it for them'

(3) It may occupy the plural position following nouns indicating either plurality of the noun or of a possessive pronoun prefix. When a possessive pronoun occurs with a noun, the plural suffix almost invariably has reference to the pronoun. An unpossessed noun, on the other hand, may have a plural suffix indicating plurality of the noun, even though followed by an associative noun (or noun phrase) which indicates the possessor of the noun.

kſtš[tutik] 'our (excl) chile'
yſtš[ik] 'their chile'
nā[etik] kú?un 'my houses'
?ants[etik] kú?untutik 'our (excl) women'

The distribution of the various morphophonemic realizations of Plural is described below, first for forms which indicate plurality of pronouns, and then for those which indicate plurality of nouns.

In the first place, it should be noted that plurality is not always marked even when the reference is plural. The speaker may fail to mark plurality at his discretion. Apart from this freedom, there are two specific situations where plurality may not be marked.

(1) In a transitive or referential verb neither of whose nominal referents is third person, the agent may not be overtly marked as plural if the other referent is plural.

láx kīloš[uk] 'I/we (excl) saw [you (pl)]'
láx avīlun[tutik] 'you (sg/pl) saw [us (excl)]'
láx skūtšbun[tutik] 'He/they carried him for [us (excl)]'
láx skūtšboš[uk] 'He/they carried him for [you (pl)]'

(2) A third person goal of a transitive verb, or a third person referent of a referential verb may not be overtly marked as plural unless the agent is first person singular.

láx kīl[ik] 'I saw them'
láx kīltutik 'We saw him/them'
láx avīl 'You (sg) saw him/them'
láx avīlik 'You (pl) saw him/them'

láx klitik 'We (incl) saw him/them' láx yll 'He saw him/them' láx yllik 'They saw him/them'

With the above restrictions, <u>PLURAL</u> is realized morphophonemically as follows to indicate plurality of pronouns:

(1) as tutik to indicate plurality of first person;

láx kfi[tutik]ot 'We (excl) saw you (sg)'
tixmfi xbá[tutik] 'We (excl) will kill each other'
láx yfiun[tutik] 'He/they saw us (excl)'
tšiyál[tutik] 'We (excl) will descend'
xmé?[tutik] 'our (excl) mother'

(2) as Uk to indicate plurality of second or third person;

láx avīl[uk]un 'You (pl) saw me'
láx avīl[ik] 'You (pl) saw him/them'
láx amāx abā[ik] 'You (pl) hit each other'
láx yīloš[uk] 'He/they saw you (pl)'
tša?ātin[ik] 'You (pl) will bathe'
atē?[ik] 'your (pl) poles'
láx yīl[uk]un 'They saw me'
láx yīl[uk]ot 'They saw you (sg)'
láx yīl[ik] 'They saw him/them'
tsmīl sbā[ik] 'They will kill each other'
tš?ābtex[ik] 'They are working'
snā[ik] 'their house'

(3) as tik to indicate plurality of an inclusive person when the agent of a transitive or referential verb or the possessor of a noun;

láx kn[tik] 'We (incl) saw him/them'
tixkôlta xbá[tik] 'We (incl) will help each other'
lá xpásbe[tik] 'We (incl) did it for him/them'
xlúm[tik] 'our (incl) land'

(4) and as <u>ukutik</u> to indicate plurality of an inclusive person when agent of an intransitive verb, goal of a transitive verb, or referent of a referential verb.

láx yfl[ukutik] 'He/they saw us (incl)'

tšixnáki[ukutik] 'We (incl) will sit down'
láx yák'b[ukutik] 'He/they gave it to us (incl)'

The realization of <u>PLURAL</u> when indicating plurality of a noun classifies nouns into four subsets. The vast majority of nouns are pluralized by <u>etik</u>.

?áxvalil[etik] 'authorities'
vinik[etik] 'men'
xkérem[etik] 'my boys'
atséb[etik] 'your (sg) girls'

The other three subsets are quite small, and are limited to obligatorily possessed nouns.

(1)  $\underline{tak}$  occurs with a small subset of obligatorily possessed nouns, most of which are kinship terms.

xbankil[tak] 'my older brothers'
xmoso[tak] 'my servants'
tote[tak] 'Fathers!'

(2) ab only occurs with two kinship terms.

snīt'šn[ab] 'his sons'
kīt'sin[ab] 'my younger brothers (in one's family)'

(3) Vbtak only occurs with five kinship terms.

xvf\$[obtak] 'my older sisters'
smfk[ubtak] 'her younger siblings'
yal[abtak] 'her children'

<u>6.3.</u> Determiner Phrases. A DETERMINER PHRASE consists of the Determiner  $\underline{t}i$  followed by a noun, a noun phrase, a relator phrase based on k'alal or  $\underline{m}i$ , or a clause. A form must be determined by  $\underline{t}i$  if it has been previously mentioned or is clearly understood from the context or situation. In nominal positions, the determiner  $\underline{t}i$  almost always occurs with one of the deictic endings,  $\underline{i}$  (immediate context) or  $\underline{e}$  (remote context).

1xêtš 2yû ?ûn sti4tšópol [stiskristšánoetik-i]. '2Because of this, 1it is thus

 $_{3}$ (that) [ $_{5}$ the  $_{8}$ people  $_{7}$ (immediate)]  $_{4}$ are evil (i. e., Therefore the people right here are evil).' (PP082)

1tšbá 2xsá? 3tál [4ti5xbánkile]. '¡Going 2I look for 3coming [4(the) 5my elder brother 8(remote)] (i. e., I'll go and look for my elder brother).' (SM035)
11ax 2yá?i 3ti4itix [5ti6kampána7e]. '¡, 2They heard 3that [5the 8bell 7(remote)]
4 rang.' (FB002)

The Determiner Phrase may be a contrary-to-fact condition and occupy the conditional position of a clause when the form determined is a subjunctive clause. Any affirmative subjunctive clause may occur with ti in this way, but of negative verbs, only the negative subjunctive verb mantsuk may so occur.

[1ti2tšápaluk3e] 4tšbá 5kft'š 6tálel. '[1That 2it be ready 3(remote), ] 4going 5I bring it 6coming (i.e., If it were ready, I would go and get it).'

[1tl2laxuk 3stson4e] 5xa? 6mas 7lek. '[1That2,3he had sold it4 (remote),] 5it is that: 8most 7good it is (i.e., If he had sold it, it would have been better).'

[1ti2mantšuk 3itšam 4ti5stot 6ti7k'ak'al8e] 8xetš 10mu 11šixtšam. '[1That 2it be no matter (that) 6the 7sun's 8(remote) 4(the) 5father 3died] 8it is thus 10not 11we die (i.e., If the sun's father had not died, thus we would not die).' (SM013)

[1ti2mantšuk 3ti 426y 5mût'šu 8tšisk6ltaun] 7mû 85û? 8tšaxk'6ponot 10 26p.

'[1That 2it be no matter 3that 4there is 5who 6is helping me] 7it is not 8it is able 8I talk to you 10much (i.e., If it were not that there is someone helping me, I would not be able to write much to you).' (NL091)

<u>6.4. Deictic Endings.</u> There are two DEICTIC ENDINGS, <u>i</u> (immediate context) and <u>e</u> (remote context). They occur finally in both verb and nominal positions. In the case of a noun phrase which occupies a clause position, even if the noun phrase is constituted of several embedded forms which independently might have a deictic ending, these forms may not have such an ending when embedded in another phrase.

<u>e</u> is much more frequent than  $\underline{i}$ , presumably for semantic reasons, since  $\underline{i}$  is limited to immediate context only. In a concordance of 45,914 tokens,  $\underline{e}$  occurred 2,269 times, while  $\underline{i}$  occurred only 84 times. As the final syllable of phrases, deictic endings always occur with phrase stress.

 $_{1}$ xókol  $_{2}$ avál  $_{3}$ ti $_{4}$ láx  $_{5}$ apásbun  $_{6}$ tálel  $_{7}$ ti $_{8}$ xkárta $[_{9}$ é]. ' $_{1}$ Trouble  $_{2}$ you say  $_{3}$ that  $_{4,5}$ you made for me  $_{6}$ coming  $_{7}$ (the)  $_{8}$ my letter  $[_{8}$ (remote)] (i. e., Thank you for sending me the letter).' (NM303)

 $_1$ tšaxák'bot  $_2$ xó  $_2$ ot $_3$ []  $_4$ k'úsi  $_5$ tšanóp.  $_1$ I will ask you  $_2$ it is you  $_3$ (immediate)] what is it  $_5$ you think (i. e., I will ask you what you think).' (NM454)

### RELATOR PHRASES

A relator phrase is a relator-axis construction based on one of four relators:

- 1. <u>ti</u>
- 2. <u>?ásta</u>
- 3. k'álal
- 4. mi

7.1. ti-Phrases. A ti-PHRASE consists of the relator ti followed by a noun, a noun phrase, or a clause. It is one of three types.

A MANNER ti-PHRASE occupies the Manner Position of a Clause and has a Noun or Noun Phrase of Manner as axis.

11tk 25k'ex 35ba [4ti 52ánil]. '1Began 2he set aside 3himself [4in 5a hurry] (i.e., He got out of the way in a hurry).' (PP011)

[1tl2pek'] 3tskuts 4batel. '[(It's) 1with 2a tumpline] 3he will carry it 4going.' (SD022)

1pásbil [2ti3sk'6b 4kristšáno]. 'It has been made [2by4 people's 3hands].' (X2. 187)

A LOCATIVE <u>ti-PHRASE</u> occupies the Locative Position of a Clause and has a Locative Noun, or Locative Noun Phrase as axis.

11ax 2slapik [3ti4prešu]. '1 2They enclosed him [3in4 prison] (i.e., They threw him into prison).' (MC011)

111? [2tiavistan]. 'It is here [2in aHuixtan].' (MC011)

1 isanav [2117 3ti, slók'eb 5k'ak'al]. '1He travelled [2here 3at 4 its place of exiting 5the sun] (i.e., He travelled here in the east).' (VA052)

A TEMPORAL ti-PHRASE occupies the Time Position of a Clause and has a Temporal Stative Stem, a Temporal Noun Phrase, or a Numeral Clause as axis.

 $\frac{1\times6?}{6}$   $\frac{214\times}{6}$   $\frac{3594\times}{6}$   $\frac{4}{15}$   $\frac{1}{15}$   $\frac{$ 

- 11ax 2 smil 3 shaik [4ti5 svisperesal 6ti7k'in6e]. '1,2 They killed 3 each other [40n 5the night before 6the 7 fiesta 8 (remote)].'
- 1tixk'opon 2xbatik [sti4yan 5 semana]. '1We will talk to 2each other [sat 4 another 5 week] (i.e., We will talk together some other time).' (NM259)
- 7.2. ?ásta-Phrases. An ?ásta-PHRASE consists of the Relator ?ásta followed by a temporal noun or noun phrase, a ti-Phrase, or a clause as axis. ?ásta is borrowed from Spanish hasta 'until'. In Huixtec, it indicates that the action or state of the matrix clause continues (continued, etc.) up to the point in time indicated in the axis of the ?ásta-Phrase.
- 1stalel 2te 3 26y 4ti 5 slikeb [6 2 asta 7 slaxeb]. 'It's his nature 2 there 3 he is 4 from 5 its beginning [6 up to 7 its end] (i.e., It's his nature to be there from the beginning to the end).' (X1.115)

1sk'án2to 3tixk'él [4°ásta 5sláxeb 6ti7xún8e]. '1Its lack is 2still 3I read [4up to 5its end 6the 7book8 (remote)] (i.e., I still haven't read to the end of the book).'

1kfloxtutik 2k'alal 3bfk'ituntutik [4ºasta 5ti6º6ra7to]. '1We have seen it 2when 3we (excl) were small [4up to 5at 6time 7still] (i.e., We have seen it since we were small right up until now).' (CL035)

1xá? 2xétš 314 4xpástutik [5?ásta 6nipástutik 7ti6vínik]. '¡It is that: 2it is thus 3,4 we (excl) did [5until 6we (excl) were made 7into 8men] (i.e., This is how we did until we became men).' (CL031)

7.3. k'álal-Phrases. A k'álal-PHRASE consists of the Relator k'álal followed by a noun, a ti-Phrase, or a clause as axis. It is one of two types.

A LOCATIVE <u>k'alal-PHRASE</u> may occupy the Locative position of a clause, the subject position of a Question Clause based on <u>buth</u> 'where', or the axis of a <u>mi-Phrase</u>. It indicates that the action or state of the matrix clause continues to the point specified in the axis of the <u>k'alal-Phrase</u>.

 $_{1}$ lá  $_{2}$ snútsik  $_{3}$ bátel  $_{3}$ (going)  $_{4}$ s far as  $_{5}$ Las Casas].'

1ti2bû [3k'âlal 45û? 5kû?un]6e 7tšaxkóltaot. '1(The) 2where [3as far as 4it is able 5by me] 6(remote) 7I will help you (i.e., I'll help you as much as I can).' (NM094)

[1k'álal 2tisxtéklum] 4mi[5k'álal eti7xóbel] 850 7852 10y0 2un 11ti12kérem 13e. '[1As far as 2to 3town] 4if [5as far as 6to 7Las Casas] 8is able 9 now 10by him 11the 12boy 13 (remote) (i.e., The boy can now travel as far as town or as far as Las Casas).'

The axis of a locative  $\underline{k'}$ alal-Phrase may be a locative noun, or a locative  $\underline{ti}$ -Phrase.

11êk 21šánav 3k'álal [4méxiko]. '1Fine 2it travelled 3as far as [4Mexico City].'
11i2diós3e 41áx 5stén 6bátel 7k'álal [8ti9yfbil 10vínaxel]11ti12púkux13e. '1(The)
2God 3(remote) 4,5threw 6(going) 7as far as 8 to 8 its roots (the) 10sky] 11the
12devil 13(remote) (i.e., God threw the devil as far as the ends of the
earth).' (DB033)

A TEMPORAL <u>k'álal</u>-PHRASE may occupy the Time Position of a clause or the Subject Position of an Attention Clause. It indicates that the action or state of the matrix clause is during the time specified in the axis of the <u>k'álal-Phrase</u>.

[1k'álal 2i 7ét's 3ti4xtéklum] 5ikil [8k'álal 7bik'itun8t08e]. '[1When 2he passed 3through 4town] 5I saw him [8when 7I was small 8still8(remote)].' (MC045) 1xá 72to [8k'álal 4lá 5 xtátutik 6ti7bé 8ti9xtómas10e] 11xá 712to 13láx 14ká 7itutik. '1It is that 2still: [3when 4,5we found 8(the) 8Thomas 10(remote) 60n (the) 7trail] 11it is that 12still: 13,14we heard it (i.e., Not until we met Thomas on the road did we hear it).'

The axis of a Temporal  $\underline{k'\underline{a}\underline{l}\underline{a}\underline{l}}$ -Phrase may be a Temporal  $\underline{t}\underline{i}$ -Phrase or a clause. With a  $\underline{t}\underline{i}$ -Phrase as axis, the Temporal  $\underline{k'\underline{a}\underline{l}\underline{a}\underline{l}}$ -Phrase indicates that the action or state of the matrix clause is consummated at the point of time indicated in the axis of the  $\underline{k'\underline{a}\underline{l}\underline{a}\underline{l}}$ -Phrase.

 $\frac{15atal}{5}\frac{2k'alal}{4}\frac{[ati_4x6']axuneb}{5}\frac{5k'ak'al}{6}.$  '1You come 2as long as [3in 4fifteen 5days] (i. e., You come in fifteen days).' (NM070)  $\frac{1}{1}\frac$ 

14015k'álal [16ti17yán 18xábil]. 'It is not 2we know 3if 4we will return 5(going) 8in 7another 8 month 80r 10as long as [11in 12eight 13days] 140r 15as long as [16in 17another 18year] (i.e., We don't know if we will return some other month or in eight days or some other year).' (X1.144)

1tsmán 2vákašetik 3ti4kristšánoetik 5k'álal [8mű7to 876yuk 8 yíl]. '3The 4people 1buy 2cattle 5when [8it is not 7still 8it be there 3their debt] (i.e, The people buy cattle when they don't still have debts).' (OD024)

<u>k'álal</u> occurs idiomatically as subject of a Location Clause based on  $\underline{te}$  with the meaning 'that's that'.

1<u>mizitšám</u> 3<u>té [4k'álal]</u>. '1If 2it died (it's) 3there [4when] (i.e., If it dies, that's that).' (MG068)

1te [2k'álal] 3mi, xetš 5k'án 6ti7diós6e. '(It's) 1there [2when] 3if 4it is thus 6(the) 7God 8(remote) 5 wants (i.e., If that's what God wills, that's that).' (MG046)

7.4. mi-Phrases. A mi-PHRASE is a Conditional Phrase. It consists of the Relator mi followed by a clause as axis. It may occupy the conditional position of a clause, the subject of a Manner clause, or the object of Description clauses (4.1).

[1mi250? 3tšamán 4tálel] 5tákbun 6tálel. '[1st 2it is able 3you will buy it 4coming] 5 send it to me 6coming (i.e., If you are able to buy it, send it to me).'
(NM598)

[1mi2tšk'6t sti4pásel e] exá? 7lék. '[1f 2it arrives 3by 4being done 5 (remote),]
eit is that: 7it is good (i.e., If it happens, that will be good).' (PP322)
1tixk'él [2mi3tá4yútsil]. '1 will look [2if 3it finds 4its niceness] (i.e., I will see if it is enough).' (NM536)

When the matrix clause is a negation clause, the Conditional Phrase may have a subjunctive clause based on the numeral 'one' or <u>xútuk</u> 'little' as axis to indicate absolute negation.

[1mi2xûnuk] 3mû?yuk 4mût'šu 5?ôtšem 6ti7máystro 811?8to. '[1st 2it be one] 3it is not there be 4who it is 5 entered 6as 7 teacher 6 here 3 still (i.e., There is not even one who has become a teacher here).' (CL059)
1mû2xmá?tik [3mi4xûtuk]. '1st is not 2we know it [3if4 it be a little] (i.e., We don't know anything).' (F2.071)

A QUESTION FOR CONFIRMATION is a Conditional Phrase functioning alone as an independent sentence. (It carries no special interrogative intonation.)

\[
\frac{1mi\_2 \texp\delta \text{stik.}}{2mi\_2 \text{spastik.}} \frac{1}{4} \text{If 2} \text{ we will do it (i.e., Will we do it)?' (FB002)}{2mi\_2 \text{26p}\_3 \text{skin} \text{skin} \text{skin} \text{skin} \text{smuch}\_3 \text{they want [4if 5I will give it to them)?' (NM278)}
\]

\[
\text{them} \text{(i.e., If they want a lot, will I give it to them)?' (NM278)}
\]

The answer to a QUESTION FOR CONFIRMATION is never just 'yes', for which there is no lexical equivalent in Huixtec, and rarely 'no'; but usually involves repeating the predicator used in the question with or without negation (and any appropriate change of subject).

For example, if the question is <u>mitšabāt '?6k'om</u> 'Are you going tomorrow?', a typical affirmative answer is <u>tšibāt</u> 'I am going' and a negative answer, <u>mū šibāt</u> 'I am not going'. The question may be negative, <u>mimū šabāt '?6k'om</u> 'Aren't you going tomorrow?', and either of the two answers can still be given.

Any question, of course, has many possible answers. A question such as <u>mitšak'ān tšak'ēl xūn</u> 'Do you want to read (lit., look at paper)?' may be answered in the following (as well as other) ways:

tixk'él. 'I'll look at it.'

tixk'án tixk'él. 'I want to look at it.'

mű xk'án. 'I don't want it.'

mű šű?. 'I am not able to.'

mű xmá?. 'I don't know how.'

### MODALS

A modal is one of a miscellaneous set of fifteen adverbs, which modify a predicator or clause. The fifteen modals are:

| 1.  | to            | (continuative)    |
|-----|---------------|-------------------|
| 2.  | ša            | (perfective)      |
| 3.  | ?os           | (past perfective) |
| 4.  | 20            | (conclusive)      |
| 5.  | no?oš         | (limitative)      |
| 6.  | me            | (emphatic)        |
| 7.  | van           | (dubitative)      |
| 8.  | bi            | (assertative)     |
| 9.  | mati          | (cognitive)       |
| 10. | la            | (quotative)       |
| 11. | <u>noštok</u> | (repetitive)      |
| 12. | ?uk           | (adjunctive)      |
| 13. | xu?un         | (asseverative)    |
| 14. | xumbi         | (speculative)     |
| 15. | tše?          | (consequential)   |
|     |               |                   |

The form modified and following modal adverb together constitute a MODAL PHRASE The form modified may be a word, a phrase, or a clause. A Modal Phrase may itself be modified by a modal, thus allowing (in a restricted sense) self-embedding. This may result in two, or even three, modals occurring in sequence. There are, of course, heavy restrictions on which modals may modify what forms, and each modal seems to have a unique distribution.

```
26y 'there is'
26y <u>Sa</u> 'there already is'
26y <u>Sa</u> van 'there probably already is'
26y <u>Sa</u> me van 'there probably already (emphatic) is'
```

8.1. The PRESENT CONTINUATIVE PHRASE may be any otherwise unmodified predicator followed by to (present continuative). It indicates that action initiated in the past continues in the present.

```
_{1}láx[_{2}to] _{3}xpás. '3I [_{2}still] _{1.3}did it.' (F2, 153)
```

- $_{1}\underline{m0[_{2}to]}$   $_{3}\underline{sk4k!}$ .  $_{1}It$  is not  $_{2}still]$   $_{3}I$  give her (i. e., I still will not give her).' (AB102)
- 8.2. The PERFECTIVE PHRASE may be any otherwise unmodified predicator followed by <u>§a</u> (perfective). It indicates that an action is prior to present or future time.
- 1mú[2ša] 31f?ukot 4ti méxiko. '1It is not [2now] 3you be here 4in 5Mexico (i.e.,
  You are not here in Mexico now).' (NM348)
  1?áy[3ša] 3sp'[5 4ti bálumile. '3He has [2already] 1come and gone (and) 3meas-

ured the sland (remote). (NM592)

- 8.3. The PAST PERFECTIVE PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicator of a perfection Phrase followed by <u>?oš</u> (past perfective). It indicates that an action is prior to some other past action.
- 1k'álal 2i'ôtš 3ti4xóbel 5itál[8'20š] 7ti 8'ávyon. 14When 2he entered 3(into) 4Las Casas, 7the 8 plane 5came [8already] (i.e., When he entered Las Casas, the plane had already come). (ODO71)

1ti<sub>2</sub> ? akôsto 3 y [x<sub>4</sub> ša[ 5 ? 0 š] 6 ti<sub>7</sub> x t šôb<sub>8</sub> e. '1 In 2 August 6 (the) 7 my cornfield 6 (remote)

(is) anow [salready] ripe.' (YW008)

- 8.4. The CONCLUSIVE PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicator, a Perfective Phrase, or a clause followed by  $\underline{20}$  (conclusive). It indicates a lack of deviation.
- 1te[2 ?0]3no ?oš 4 isút 5batel. '1It was there [2(conclusive)] 3precisely 4he returned 5going.' (OD094)
- 1muk<sub>2</sub>sa[3 ?o] 4sut 5batel. '1It be not 2 now [3 (conclusive)] the returns 5 going (i.e., He never went back now).' (OD084)
- 1md<sub>2</sub>sa 3xk'antik[4?0]. '1It is not 2now 3we want it [4(conclusive)] (i.e., We now don't want it ever).' (PP254)
- 8.5. The LIMITATIVE PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicator, a Present Continuative, a Perfective, or a Conclusive Phrase followed by no?oš (limitative). It indicates circumscribed and unmixed action.
- 1 vókol[2no os] 3itīl. '1 Trouble [2 precisely] 3it burst into flame (i.e., It didn't want to light).' (PP042)
- 1te<sub>2</sub>to[3no ?oš] 4xtalel 5tšixnūpun. 'It is there 2still [3precisely] 4our custom (that) 5we marry (i.e., It's still our custom to marry).' (AB109)

- 11ax25a[3no?o5] 4xt'5ak. '1Finished 2now [3precisely] 4we divide them (i.e., We have already disbursed them).' (NM134)

  to 20[no?o5] 1stt hatel | Lityes there (conclusive) [nrecisely] the re-
- 1te 2 ? o[3 no ? o 8] 4 isút 5 bátel. 'It was there 2 (conclusive) [3 precisely] 4 he returned 5 going.' (OD094)
- 8.6. The EMPHATIC PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicator, a present continuative, a perfective, or a limitative phrase followed by me (emphatic). It indicates emphasis.
- ina?ik[2me] 3akotolik. 'aRemember [3(emphatic)] 3all of you.' (X1.105)
  ita2to[3me] 4stsapax. 'aFind 2still [3(emphatic)] 4it is arranged (i.e., It will still be settled).'
- 1mú2ša[3me] 4šálik 5ti6kóralito. '1It is not 2now [3(emphatic)] 4they do down 5to 6Corralito (i.e. They are not to go down to Corralito now).' (PP030) 1xún2no ?oš[3me] 4kárton 5tškít'š 6bátel. '1One 20nly [3(emphatic)] 6carton (that) 5I'll take 6going (i.e., I'll take only one carton).'

In Negation Clauses  $\underline{me}$  indicates injunctions. Compare the following sets of examples:

mů šapás. 'You are not doing it.'
můme šapás. 'Don't do it!'
mů xpástik. 'We don't do it.'
můme xpástik. 'Let us not do it.'

- 8.7. The DUBITATIVE PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicate, a present continuative, a perfective, or a limitative, followed by van (dubitative). It indicates that an action is probable.
- 1x6?obuk[3van] 3144xműk. 'It be five [2probably] (that) 3,4 I buried (i.e., It was probably five that I buried).' (OD107)
- 1mu2to[3van] 4sk'an. '1It is not 2still [3probably] he wants it (i.e., He probably does not want it yet).'
- 1 26y2 5a[svan] 4xinuk 52i. 1 There is 3 now [sprobably] 4 be it one 5 month (i.e., It is now probably about a month). (F2. 154)
- 1xéts, no ?oš[svan] 4tšálik. '1It is thus 2 precisely [3 probably] 4 they are saying it (i. e., They are probably saying just that).' (MC058)
- 8.8. The ASSERTATIVE PHRASE is a clause or a conclusive phrase followed by bi (assertative). It indicates that a statement is unquestionably true.

- 1xá? 2tixk'án[3bi]. '1It is that: 2I want it [3for sure] (i.e., That's what I want).'
  (PP395)
- 1ptkux 2 ? o[3bi]. '1(It's) a devil 2(conclusive) [3for sure] (i.e., It's devilish for sure).' (PP144)
- 8.9. The COGNITIVE PHRASE is an otherwise unmodified predicator followed by mati (cognitive). It indicates a sudden recognition of actuality. The Cognitive Phrase receives phrase stress on its final syllable, and often occurs with exclamatory intonation.
- itš6pol[2matf]. 'It is harmful [2truly] (i.e., It really is harmful)!' (F2.133)
  ix6vil[2matf] itixk'6pontik. 'It is in vain [2truly] (that) we talk to him (i.e.,
  It really is in vain that we talk to him)!'
- 8.10. The QUOTATIVE PHRASE is a clause, an otherwise unmodified predicator, a present continuative, or a perfective phrase followed by  $\underline{la}$  (quotative). It indicates that someone other than the speaker is originally responsible for the statement.
- ik'úsi[2la] 3tšak'án. '1What is it [2it is said] 3you want (i.e., What do you
  want?, she said).'
- ativial[21a] 3 ? Itsin. It is coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming). (F1.016)

  1 owl was coming). (F1.016)

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  1 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  2 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  3 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  3 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  3 owl was coming [2 it is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said an owl was coming).

  3 owl was coming [2 it is is said] 3 an owl (i.e., They said).

  4 owl was coming [2 it i
- 126y2to[31a] 42fsim. '1There is 2still [3it is said] 4corn (i.e., They say there is still corn).'
- 1tšák'2ša[31a]. '1He is giving it 2already [3it is said] (i.e., They say he is already giving it).'
- 8.11. The REPETITIVE PHRASE is a clause followed by <u>noštok</u> (repetitive). It indicates that an action has been performed before.
- 1ti2xûnyo 3tši?ák'inax[4noštok]. '(It's) 1in 2June 3I weed [4again].' (YW004)
  126y2van 3xûnuk 4k'ák'al[5noštok] 6lá 7xīt'tutik 118na10e. '1There is 2probably
  3be it one 4day [5again] (that) 6,7I put the walls on 8 the 3house 10(remote)
  (i.e., There was probably another day again when we put the walls on the house).' (HB022)
- 8.12. The ADJUNCTIVE PHRASE occurs in a variety of clause positions and, unlike other modals, may consist of a possessed noun with following <a href="https://www.numer.

- 1tšakálbot[2<sup>2</sup>uk] 3<sup>i</sup>?6tš 4ti5kavílto 8ti7xmíkel8e. '1I will tell you [2also] (that) 8(the) 7Miguel 8(remote) 3entered 4the 5presidency (i.e., I will tell you that Miguel has town work).' (NM152)
- \[
   \frac{1\text{talel}}{2\text{talel}} \frac{2\text{talel}}{2\text{talel}} \frac{1\text{tigxnit'\son\_7e}}{2\text{ton\_7e}}, \quad \frac{1}{2\text{talel}} \frac{2\text{talel}}{2\text{talel}} \frac{2\text{
- 8.13. The ASSEVERATIVE PHRASE is a clause followed by  $\underline{xu?un}$  (asseverative). It indicates strong affirmation with an implied lack of forbearance.
- 1k'alal 2ital 3ti carranza[5xu?un] 3lax 7stoy 8ti 3axvalil. 'It was when 8(the)
  4Carranza 2came [5(affirmation)] 8the 3authorities 8,7 raised it (the wage).'
  (OD008)
- 1ti<sub>2</sub> ?ora<sub>8</sub>me[4xu?un]. '1At 2once 3(emphatic) [4(affirmation)] (i.e., (Do it) right away)!' (NM489)
- 8.14. The SPECULATIVE PHRASE is a clause followed by <u>xumbi</u>, which occurs with phrase stress on its final syllable. The derivation of xumbi is not clear. It looks in form like <u>xu?un</u> (asseverative) or <u>xûn</u> 'one' followed by <u>bi</u> (assertative), but the joining of these does not give an acceptable semantic interpretation. It indicates indecisiveness and a willingness to further consider the situation.
- 1xtûk 2tšikôm[3xumbf]. '1I alone 2(I) will stay [3I guess].' (AJ034)
  1mêlel 2mû3to 4škâk' [3xumbf]. '1It's true (that) 2it is not 3still 4I give her
  [5I am thinking] (i.e., It's true, I am not thinking of giving her yet).'
  (AB102)
- 8.15. The CONSEQUENTIAL PHRASE is a clause followed by  $\underline{t}$  (consequential) and the deictic ending  $\underline{e}$  (remote context). It indicates that an action naturally follows from something else.
- ik'élo 2avíl [3tšé?4e] tšánav tšavíl. '[3So 4(remote)] ilook (so) 2you see, 5he is walking 8you see (i.e., So look, he is walking you see).' (MC015) 1tá2me 3šaválbun 4tálel 5k'úsi 8'óra 7tšatál [8tšé?9e]. '[8So 8(remote)] ifind 2(emphatic) 3you tell me 4 coming 5what 8time 7you will come (i.e. So you will tell me when you are coming).' (NM550)

### APPOSITION

Apposition is an important phenomenon in Tzotzil (as in other languages) and one which requires a good deal more study and understanding than is represented by this brief chapter. The following description, therefore, must be considered only suggestive and tentative. Further study should take semological units into consideration.

Appositive phrases are additive or alternative. Alternative phrases may occur in the Time, Conditional and Object positions of the clause; Additive phrases may occur in any nominal position of the clause, and in the Time, Location, and Vocative positions.

- 9.1. Alternative Phrases. Alternative Phrases in the Time position are composed of two temporal stative verbs.
- 1tšaxk'óponot 2 ?ók'om 3tšá?ex, '1I will talk to you 2tomorrow (or) 3two days from now (i.e. the next day).' (AB230)

Alternative phrases in the Object and Conditional positions are always  $\underline{mi}$ -Phrases.

- In Object: itšká?itik,ša 3mi4tstšápax 6 8mi7mű 8stšápax6e. '¡We will hear 2now 3if 4it will be arranged 5(remote) 8if 7it is not 8it is arranged 6(remote) (i.e., We will hear now whether it will be taken care of or not).' (PP174)
- In Conditional: <a href="mi2kerem 3mi4tseb">1mi2kerem 3mi4tseb</a> 5tstóy 8sbáik. '1If 2it is a boy 3if 4it is a girl 5they lift up 6themselves (i. e, Whether boy or girl they want to go their own way).' (EW055)
- 9.2. Additive Phrases. Additive Phrases may be series of nouns, phrases, or clauses, or combinations of these.
- In Possessor: 116k 2 ? 6yuntutik 3 stší ? uk 4 ti 5 kermána 6 maryána 7 krasyéla 8 xmartín. 14 Fine 2 we (excl) are 3 along with 4 (the) 5 my brethren 6 Marion 7 Grace 3 Martin (i.e., Our brethren Marion, Grace, Martin and myself are all fine). (NL136)
- 1nftšim 2no ?oš 2ko ?nton 4xkotoltutik 5stší ?uk 6ti 7kermánotik 8tielí? 10skotol
  11lf? 12to 12 viniketik 14 ?ántsetik 15 ?óloletik. '1A flower 2 precisely 3our

- hearts 4 all of us (excl) 5 along with 6(the) 70ur brethren 8 that 9 are here 10 all of them 11 here 12 still 13 men 14 women 15 children (i.e., All of us here are happy along with our brethren, men, women, and children).' (MS023)
- In Object: 1skotol 2k'ák'al stšbá 4xk'ópontik 5tigxtótik 72ánxelge. 1Every 2day 3going 4we talk to 5(the) gour father 7the angel 3(remote) (i.e., Every day we go and talk to our father the Angel). (VA021)
- 1tšistšúk'bun 2ti3xk'ú? 4xpók'tutik 5e. '1She washes for us (excl) 2(the) 3our shirt-dress 4our cloth 5(remote) (i.e., She washes our clothes for us).'
  (NL107)
- In Subject: 1x4? 216k 3taka 4st'sún 5tigyan 7tigkermánotik 9xtsf'iltik 10ti
  11xtéklum. '1That is it: 2it is good 3if it were 4they believe it 5the 6others
  7(the) 8our friends 9our companions 10 in 11town (i.e., It would be good if
  the others of our brethren, our companions in town, would believe it).'
  (PP164)
- antivo stianto stianto same tutik e rlandy stianto stianto stianto stianto stianto stianto stianto stianto stianto state s
- 1<u>ná?ik2me</u> 3<u>akótolik</u> 4<u>xáyibošuk</u> 5<u>ll?oyošuk6e</u>. '1Remember 2(emphatic) 3all of you 4 how many of you 5are here 6(remote).' (X1.105)
- In Vocative: 1xbankil 2visin 3tšaxk'6pon 4ka?itik 5?6k'om 6tša?ex. '1Older brother, 2older sister, 3we will talk to you (so) 4we will hear 5tomorrow (or) 6the next day.' (AB178)

A series of Accompaniment phrases may occupy the subject position.

116k 2 76yuntutik 3 stší 7 uk 4ti 5 kermána 8 maryána 7 krasyéla 8 xmartín 9 stší 7 uk 10 x6 7 on 11 stší 7 uk 12 skótol 13 yán 14 kermánotik 15 tálem 16 ti 17 losestáros.

1 Fine 2 we (excl) are 3 along with 4 (the) 5 our friends 8 Marion, 7 Grace, 8 Martin 9 and 10 I 11 and 12 all (the) 13 other 14 our friends (who) 15 have come 16 from 17 the States.' (NL136)

A series of clauses may occupy the Subject position.

126y 2xûn 3vînik 4m6158a 6tê 7ti6t8ana?al. '1There is 20ne 3man 4he is old 5now 6he is there 7in 8Chanal (i.e., There was an old man there in Chanal).' (MC001)

A series of Determined Noun Phrases may occupy the Object position.

 $\frac{1\times4?}{15}\frac{21\pm x}{3}\frac{3}{5}\frac{\text{méltsan }_{4}}{15}\frac{4}{16}\frac{\text{skótol}}{16}\frac{5}{16}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{7}}{1}e\frac{8}{16}\frac{\text{k'ánaletik}_{10}}{16}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{11}{12}\frac{\text{vinaxel}_{13}}{12}\frac{11}{1$ 

mote) 17(the) 18 its allness 19 (remote) (i.e., It is he who made all the sky, the stars, the sky, the moon, all of it). (VA046)

A series of stative verbs, phrases, or phrase and clause may occupy the Time Position.

tšibát 256b 3 ?ik'luman 4?6k'om. '¡I will go 2early 3in the morning 4tomorrow.'
½ 2ik'ót 3ti4pásel 5ti8vó?onen 7k'álal 8?únenvinikun3to. '¡It is thus 2it
arrived 3to 4be done 5in 6the past 7when 8I was a young man still.'
½ 2ikub?osil 3 ?óy4van 5ti8báluneb 7 ?óra8 ixók' 9 lók'el. '¡At 2daybreak 3there is 4probably 5at 6nine 7hours 8it was dug 8out (i.e., It was dug up at daybreak probably around nine o'clock).' (FB041)

A series of  $\underline{ti}$ -Phrases, locative clauses, or a sequence of phrase and clause may occupy the Locative position.

1bå 2yåk'ik 3ti4póštael 5ti6? [spital. '1Went 2they give him 3to 4be doctored 5at 6a hospital (i.e., They went and turned him over to be doctored at a hospital).' (MC040)

1tšavál 2tálel 3amántal 41f? 5tigxóbel e 8té 9tigokaványa 11e. '¡You will tell 2coming 3your command 4t is here 5 in 6Las Casas (remote) 3it is there 3at 10the Cabaña 11(remote) (i.e., You will send your order here to the Cabaña here in Las Casas).' (CL074)

11ax 2 Slapik 8 ti4 prešu 516? 6 ti7 vistan. 11,2 They enclosed him 8 in 4a prison 5 it is here 8 in 7 Huixtan. (MC011)

### WORD FORMATION

A GRAMMATICAL WORD in Huixtec is either a PARTICLE or is STEM-BASED. A particle is a single morpheme which does not occur with affixes—derivational or inflectional. A stem-based word has a stem as base. A stem differs from a particle either in (1) being constituted of more than one morpheme, or (2) having a potential for occurrence with inflectional affixes, or both. A simple (i. e. one-morpheme) stem is a ROOT. A composite (i. e. more-than-one-morpheme) stem is a RADICAL, a COMPOUND, or a COMPOUND RADICAL. A radical is a root in construction with one or more derivational affixes. A compound has two constituents, either of which may be a root, a radical, or a compound. A compound radical is a compound in construction with one or more derivational affixes.

10.1. Root Classification. A Root is classified on the basis of its occurrence with inflectional affixes and upon syntactic function. There are six classes of single-function roots,

- 1. intransitive (ir)
- 2. transitive (tr)
- 3. stative (sr)
- 4. numeral(numr)
- 5. classifier (cr)
- 6. neutral (ntr)

five classes of double-function roots,

- 7. intransitive-transitive (i-tr)
- 8. intransitive-noun (i-nr)
- 9. transitive-classifier (t-cr)
- 10. transitive-noun (t-nr)
- 11. stative-noun (nr)

and one small class of triple-function roots

12. intransitive-transitive-noun (i-t-nr)

(1) An INTRANSITIVE ROOT occurs directly with intransitive inflection, as in

COMPL-FIRST-[bát] 'I went, 'n-i-bát, nibát.

COMPL-THIRD-[vínax] 'it appeared, 'i-6-vínax, ivínax.

INCOMPL-SECOND-[lúb]-PL 'You are becoming tired, 'tš-a-lúb-ik, tšalúbik.

(2) A TRANSITIVE ROOT occurs directly with transitive inflection, as in

COMPL-SECOND-FIRST-[?k!] 'I took you, 'n-a-k-?k!, nakk!, nakk!.

INCOMPL-FIRST-THIRD-[póx]-REF-FIRST 'She will snatch it away from me, 'tš-i-y-póx-be-un, tšispóxbøun, tšispóxbøun.

THIRD-FIRST-[pás]-PERF-THIRD 'I have done it, '\$\beta-k-p\hat{as-ox-\$\beta}\$, xp\hat{asox}.

(3) A STATIVE ROOT occurs directly with intransitive stative inflection as marked for passive mode and perfective aspect, yet without an overt aspect marker, as in

[nát]-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I am tall, 'nát-\$\mathcal{g}\_\mathcal{g}\_\text{un}, n\text{atun}.

[2\text{ants}]-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'It is a woman, '2\text{ants}\_\mathcal{g}

(4) and (5) NUMERAL ROOTS and CLASSIFIER ROOTS occur in compound to form a subset of stative stems.

Numeral roots name the numbers from one to twelve. They are <u>xún</u> 'one', <u>tšá?</u> 'two', <u>?óš</u> 'three', <u>tšán</u> 'four', <u>xó?</u> 'five', <u>vák</u> 'six', <u>xúk</u> 'seven', <u>vášak</u> 'eight', <u>bálun</u> 'nine', <u>láxun</u> 'ten', <u>búlutš</u> 'eleven', <u>láxtša?</u> 'twelve'.

A Classifier root is descriptive of objects quantified, and classifies nouns into gender classes. For example, vinik 'man' and ?ants 'woman' belong to one gender class and occur with the classifier vó?, whereas ?axan 'ear of corn' and lapis 'pencil' fall into a different class and occur with the classifier t'šíš.

tšá?-kót vákaž 'two (nonbiped) oxen'

?óš-kót ?ávyon 'three (nonbiped) airplanes'
tšán-kót kľtš 'four (nonbiped) peppers'
tšán-bús naránšaš 'four piles of oranges'
tšá?-vó? ?ántsetik 'two (biped) women'

A Numeral root may also occur reduplicated in construction with a classifier root to form a stative stem.

<u>xú-xú-tós</u> 'one one kind (i.e. each kind)' tša?-tša?-vó? 'two two bipeds (i.e. each pair of people)'

(6) A NEUTRAL ROOT always requires the occurrence of one or another derivational affix, the particular affix determining whether the resulting radical is intransitive, transitive, or stative. As is the case with other roots, a neutral root may occur with a variety of derivational affixes.

[ták]-in-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it is dry,' ták-in-\$\(\theta\_0\), tákin.

COMPL-THIRD-[ták]-Vx 'it dried,' i-\$\(\theta\_0\)-ták-ix, itákix.

COMPL-SECOND-[tšé?]-in 'you laughed,' n-a-tšé?in, natšé?in.

[tšé?]-ex-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'laughter,' tšé?-ex-\$\(\theta\_0\), tšé?ex as in ?ép tšák' tšé?ex 'Much it gives laughter (i. e., It makes us laugh).'

(7) An INTRANSITIVE-TRANSITIVE ROOT may occur directly with either intransitive or transitive inflection.

 $\frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\S!?]}{INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[\S!?]-THIRD} \text{ "I fear him, 't\S-$\vartheta-k-\S!?-$\vartheta, tix\si?.} \\ \frac{COMPL-FIRST-[v\varepsilon?]-THIRD}{COMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[v\varepsilon?]-THIRD} \text{ "I ate it, 'i-$\vartheta-k-v\varepsilon?-$\vartheta, ixv\varepsilon?.} \\ \frac{COMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[v\varepsilon?]-THIRD}{V} \text{ "I ate it, 'i-$\vartheta-k-v\varepsilon?-$\vartheta, ixv\varepsilon?.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-THIRD}{V} \text{ "I ate it, 'i-$\vartheta-k-v\varepsilon?-$\vartheta, ixv\varepsilon?.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-THIRD}{V} \text{ "I ate it, 'i-$\vartheta-k-v\varepsilon?-$\vartheta, ixv\varepsilon?.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-THIRD}{V} \text{ "I ate it, 'i-$\vartheta-k-v\varepsilon?-$\vartheta, ixv\varepsilon?.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-V}{V} \text{ "I ate, 'i-i-i-v\varepsilon.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-V}{V} \text{ "I ate, 'i-i-i-v\varepsilon.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-V}{V} \text{ "I ate, 'i-i-v\varepsilon.} \\ \frac{INCOMPL-FIRST-[\varepsilon!]-V}{V$ 

- (8) An INTRANSITIVE-NOUN ROOT may occur directly with intransitive inflection or noun possession.
- INCOMPL-SECOND-[p'61]-PL 'You (pl) are multiplying,' tš-a-p'6l-ik, tšap'6lik.

  SECOND-[p'61] 'your increased corn (i.e. your popped corn),' av-p'61, ap'61.
- (9) A TRANSITIVE-CLASSIFIER ROOT may occur directly with transitive inflection or function as a classifier.
- INCOMPL-THIRD-SECOND-[šét']-THIRD 'you will break it in pieces, '

  tš-\$\mathscr{g}\$-av-\$\tilde{e}t'-\mathscr{g}\$, t\tilde{s}a\tilde{e}t'.

  t\tilde{s}an-[\tilde{s}\tilde{e}t'] 'four pieces (as of a pill, cookie, etc.]

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[tút's]-THIRD 'I am cutting it, ' tš-\$\mathscr{g}\$-k-tút's-\$\mathscr{g}\$, tixtút's.

tša?-[tút's] 'two pieces (as of land, meat, etc.)'

(10) A TRANSITIVE-NOUN ROOT may occur directly with transitive or noun inflection.

COMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[tšúk]-THIRD 'I tied it, ' i-\$\vartheta\_k\$-\$\vartheta\_k\$, ixtšúk.

\[
\frac{\text{FIRST-[tšúk]}}{\text{iny}}\] 'my wool sash, ' \(\frac{\text{k-tšúk}}{\text{k-tšúk}}\), \(\frac{\text{xtšúk}}{\text{k-tšúk}}\).

\[
\frac{\text{INCOMPL-THIRD-SECOND-[mát's]-THIRD}}{\text{mát's-\$\vartheta\_k}}\] 'your corn drink, ' \(\frac{\text{av-mát's}}{\text{av-mát's}}\), \(\frac{\text{amát's}}{\text{samát's}}\).

(11) A STATIVE-NOUN ROOT occurs directly with intransitive inflection, passive mode, and perfective aspect (like single-function stative roots), and with noun possession. The vast majority of Tzotzil noun roots belong to this class.

[vinik]-PERF-PASS-SECOND 'you are a man,' vinik-\$\vartheta\_-\varth

(12) An INTRANSITIVE-TRANSITIVE-NOUN ROOT may occur with transitive or intransitive inflection, or noun possession.

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[mák]-THIRD 'I will cover it,' tš-\$\mathbf{g}-k-mák-\$\mathbf{g}\$, \frac{\text{tixmák}}{\text{tixmák}}.

COMPL-THIRD-[mák] 'It closed (by itself),' i-\$\mathbf{g}-mák, \frac{\text{imák}}{\text{tixmák}}.

\text{THIRD-[mák] 'its cover,' y-mák, smák.} \frac{\text{INCOMPL-THIRD-SECOND-[xám]-THIRD}}{\text{xám-\$\mathbf{g}\$, tša\$\mathbf{xám}, tšaxám.} \frac{\text{tixmák}}{\text{INCOMPL-THIRD-[xám] 'It is opening (by itself),' tš-\$\mathbf{g}-xám, tšxám.} \frac{\text{tixmám.}}{\text{THIRD-[xám] 'its opening (i. e. its meaning),' y-xám, sxám.}}

- 10.2. Stem Classification. A Stem is classified by the same criteria as a root: by occurrence with inflectional affixes and by syntactic function. There are three major classes of stems:
  - 1. intransitive verb stems (ivs)
  - 2. transitive verb stems (tvs)
  - 3. stative verb stems (svs)

These three classes of stems have the same inflectional and syntactic characteristics as the roots of the same name. They differ mainly from roots in including both simple roots and composite forms as well-radicals, compounds, and compound radicals.

COMPL-THIRD-[sák-Ub] 'it became light,' i-s-sák-ub, igsákub, isákub.
[káx-bát]-IMPV-SECOND 'go on ahead,' káx-bát-o-an, káxbátgan, káxbatan. INCOMPL-THIRD-[xóvil-k'óp-ox] 'He is talking in delirium,' tš-Ø-xóvilk'ópox, tšxóvilk'ópox.

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-[sakub-tas]-THIRD 'I will whiten it,' ts-\$\mathcal{g}\$-k-sakub-

tas-Ø, tixsåkubtas.

INCOMPL-THIRD-SECOND-[tšá?-pás]-THIRD 'You are doing it again,'

tš-Ø-av-tšá?-pás-Ø, tšaØtšá?pás, tšatšá?pás. láx-THIRD-SECOND-[šón-xól-Vn]-THIRD 'You used it as a pillow,' láx-Øav-šón-xól-in-Ø, láx aØšónxólin, láx ašónxólin.

[xó?-vó?]-PERF-PASS-SECOND-PL 'you are five,' xó?-vó?-\$-\$-ot-Uk, xo?vo?ošuk.

[k'on-k'on-tik]-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it is yellowish,' k'on-k'on-tik-\$\theta-\theta-\theta. k'onk'ontik.

Each of the stem classes has several subclasses, but stative verb stems, in particular, need to be divided into two classes on the basis of inflection:

- 1. noun stems (ns)
- 2. stative stems (ss)

A Noun stem may occur with possessor or plural inflection as well as stative verb stem inflection. A Stative stem only occurs with stative verb stem inflection, and may not be possessed or pluralized. Each of these classes must be further classified on syntactic grounds, and this has been indicated to a certain extent in Chapters 3 and 5 above.

FIRST-[?áxnil] 'my wife,' k-?áxnil, køáxnil, káxnil.
FIRST-[?áxnil]-PERF-PASS-SECOND 'You are my wife,' k-?áxnil-ø-ø-ot, køaxnilot, kaxnilot.

THIRD-[?áxnil]-PL 'his wives,' y-?áxnil-tak, y@áxniltak, yáxniltak.

SECOND-[ná] 'your house,' <u>av-ná</u>, <u>a@ná</u>, <u>aná</u>.

SECOND-[ná] -PERF-PASS-THIRD-PL 'These are your houses,' <u>av-ná</u>-Ø-Ø-Ø-ik, aønáik, anáik.

ná PL 'houses,' ná-etik, náetik.

postal-REF-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I have been doctored,' posta-be-RI-Ø-un, póštabøilun, póštabilun.

[takin]-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'It is dry,' takin-\$-\$-\$, takin.

No attempt is made here to classify stems on the basis of their structure. Such a classification would be extremely complex and involve the whole question of idiom formation. Discussion of derivation is limited in this study to a description of certain prime tendencies of the derivational system.

10.3. Formation of Compounds. A compound has two constituents, either of which may be a root, a radical, or a compound, in the following patterns.

### (1) Root plus root:

```
nr-nr: be-t'sft's 'trail-blood (i.e. vein, artery)'
sr-nr: k'á?-t'sfs' 'rotten-thorntree (i.e. hawthorn tree)'
tr-nr: pfs-xól 'wrap-head (i.e. hat)'
ntr-nr: k'ál-ná 'side-house (i.e. wall)'
numr-cr: tšá?-kót 'two-nonbiped (i.e. two (animals, airplanes, etc.))'
sr reduplicated: lék-lék 'good-good (i.e. just right, nice)'
sr-ir: sák-víl 'white-fly (i.e. pale (of face))'
ntr-tr: káx-sá? 'on top of-search (i.e. search before)'
numr-tr: tšá?-pás 'two-do (i.e. do again)'
ntr-ir: káx-bát 'on top of-go (i.e. go on ahead)'
numr-ir: tšá?-sút 'two-return (i.e. return again)'
Sp. loan-nr: 2óra-tšón 'right away-snake (i.e. deadly viper)'
nr-Sp. loan: 2éstranxéro-tríko 'foreign-wheat (i.e. barley)'
```

### (2) Root plus radical:

```
nr-ns: mé?-[k'ſn-ob-al] 'mother-mist (i.e. rainbow)'
sr-ns: ttl-[nftš-im] 'fetid-flower (i.e. mint)'
ir-ns: mál-[k'ák'-al] 'set-sun (i.e. afternoon)'
ntr-tvs: káx-[mél-ts-an] 'on top of-fix, make (i.e. fix, make ahead of time)'
numr-tvs: tšá?-[lók'-es] 'two-take out (i.e. take out again)'
ntr-ivs: káx-[tšáp-ax] 'on top of-prepare (i.e. prepare ahead of time)'
numr-ivs: tšá?-[kúš-i] 'two-live (i.e. come to life again)'
sr-ss: mól-[mé?-el] 'old(men)-old(women) (i.e. old people)'
numr-nums: xó?-[láxun-eb] 'five-ten (.e. fifteen)'
Sp. loan-ns: kántela-[nftš-im] 'candle-flower (i.e. gladiola)'
```

# (3) Radical plus root:

```
ns-nr: [t'sûb-il]-lûm 'powder-ground (i.e. dust)' ss-nr: [vôk'-b-il]-tê? 'broken-wood (i.e. shingles)'
```

ivs-nr: [k'at-in]-bak 'warm one's self-bone (i.e. hell)'
ss-tr: [muk-ul]-?k' 'hidden-call, invite (i.e. secretly call, invite)'
ns-Sp. loan: [te?-el]-mansana 'tree-quality-apple (i.e. apple tree)'

### (4) Radical plus radical:

ns-ns: [sik-il]-[tšám-el] 'cold-quality-sickness (i.e. malaria)'
ss-ns: [xis-b-il]-[ti-b-ol] 'cut in strips-meat (i.e. salted meat strips)'
ss-tvs: [t'šút'š-ul]-[pûš-ilan] 'small pieces-fold repeatedly (i.e. fold something smaller and smaller)'
tvs reduplicated: [mák-an]-[mák-an] 'repeatedly close off-repeatedly close off (i.e. keep on taking over (as land))'
ns reduplicated: [šók-on]-[šók-on] 'side-side (i.e. all sides (of something))'

### (5) Root plus compound:

nr-ns: tr-[mak-te?] 'opening-[enclosure-wood] (i.e. fence gate)' tr-ns: pas-[kašlan-vax] 'make-[foreign-corncakes] (i.e. bread-making)'

### (6) Radical plus compound:

ns-ns: [k'án-al]-[26?n-ton] '[yellow-quality]-[heart-stone] (i.e. bird with yellow breast)'
ss-tvc: [xov-il]-[máx-an-máx-an] '[in vain]-[hit repeatedly-hit repeatedly]
(i.e. needlessly keep on hitting repeatedly)'

# (7) Compound plus root:

ns-nr: [tšá?-vá?-al]-mé? '[two-person-quality]-mother (i.e. stepmother)'
ns-nr: [tí?-tí?]-náb '[edge-edge]-deep water (i.e. lake shore, ocean shore)'
ss-nr: [k'ál-k'ál]-víts '[side-side]-mountain (i.e. mountainsides)'
numr-cr: [xú-xú]-tšóp '[one-one]-kind (i.e. every kind)'
cr reduplicated-tr: [kóx-kóx]-tá '[layer-layer]-find (i.e. hunt with dogs)'
nums-cr: [tšán-láxun]-tšóp '[four-ten]-classifier of families (i.e. 14 families)'

## (8) Compound plus radical:

sr reduplicated-ns: [tox-tox]-[tšám-el] '[straight-straight]-[act of dying] (i. e. die very quickly)'

10.4. Formation of Compound Radicals. A compound radical is a compound in construction with one or more derivational affixes.

An Intransitive compound radical is a noun compound in construction with an intransitivizing suffix Vx or van.

xôvil-k'ôp-ox 'be delirious; 'Cf. xôvil-k'ôp 'foolish words'.

pán-mûkta-van 'take on the character of a spy; 'Cf. pán-mûkta 'spy on someone'.

A Transitive compound radical is a noun compound in construction with a transitivizing suffix Vn or ta.

<u>šón-xól-in</u> 'use as a pillow;' Cf. <u>šón-xól</u> 'pillow'. <u>k'únil-k'óp-ta</u> 'entreat;' Cf. k'únil-k'óp 'soft words'.

A Noun compound radical is a noun compound in construction with a nominalizing suffix II or Al.

t'šúk-t'šút-il 'belt for men (unpossessed); 'Cf. t'šúk-t'šút 'belt for men (possessed).'

tsó?-mút-al as in tsó?-mútal-?ľtš 'a kind of pepper: 'Cf. tsó?-mút 'bir

ts6?-mút-al as in ts6?-mútal-?ſtš 'a kind of pepper;' Cf. ts6?-mút 'bird dung'.

A Stative compound radical is composed of the stativizing suffix tik or an and either two roots of different classes or a reduplicated root.

<u>?ik'-lúm-an</u> 'very early in the morning;' Cf. <u>?ik'</u> 'black' and <u>lúm</u> 'ground'. <u>bé-bé-tik</u> 'a place of many trails;' Cf. <u>bé</u> 'trail, road'. <u>k'ón-tik</u> 'it is yellowish;' Cf. <u>k'ón</u> 'yellow'.

### 10.5-10.9. Derivational Suffixes

No attempt is made here to give a strict distributional statement of derivational affixes. Though Huixtec presents a very fascinating problem in stem derivation, only a very tentative and general outline of the system can be given.

An interesting problem for further study (which would require comparative data from related Mayan languages) would be to see if roots can be shown to have (in general) a CVC structure in terms of phonological realization.

Many forms realized as CVCVC and CVCCVC have been analyzed in this

study as roots for lack of convincing evidence to the contrary, but it is suspected that further study (and further data) might reveal the last -VC or -CVC of such roots to be (at least in some historical sense) derivational in nature. The reader will note that almost all derivational affixes have the form -VC, and that a great many roots have the form CVC. A few affixes with form -CVC are easily conceived as a reduction of -VC +-VC.

Derivational affixes fall into four broad classes as defined by the class of radicals of which they are the outermost layer of derivation, and corresponding to the four classes of inflection. Thus, if a radical is constituted of a root followed by three derivational suffixes (not uncommon in Huixtec), the last (right-hand-most) suffix determines the possible syntactic functions of the radical, and the type of inflection which may occur. The four classes are: intransitivizer, transitivizer, stativizer, and nominalizer. The affixes are listed and illustrated below with a general statement of the classes of constituents with which they may occur in construction. In some cases, it is possible to assign a lexical value to a particular derivational affix, in other cases not.

Derivational affixes not accounted for in this classification have been introduced above (2.3-2.6) without mentioning their derivational nature. The morphemes in question are <u>PERF</u>, <u>REF</u>, <u>PASS</u>, and <u>SUBJN</u>. They are considered derivational in that verbs formed with them may receive further derivational affixation, as in the following examples.

```
yax-em-al 'wound;' Cf. yax-em 'wounded'.

t'šûn-ox-el 'faith;' Cf. t'šûn-ox 'has believed'.

mél-ts-am-b-el 'manufacture for someone;' Cf. mél-ts-am-be 'make it for him'.

vó-b-il-al 'roasted (things);' Cf. vó-b-il 'roasted by someone'.

xûn-uk-al 'whichever one;' Cf. xûn-uk 'be it one'.
```

Apart from these, there are 29 class-changing suffixes and 8 non-class-changing affixes. They are presented below under the heads intransitivizing, transitivizing, stativizing, and nominalizing suffixes, and non-class-changing affixes.

- 10.5. Intransitivizing Suffixes. There are eight intransitivizing suffixes: van, Vx, Ub, Cun, et, i, Vn, and av. (Where V represents the affix vowel, it has not always been possible to determine the rules of occurrence of the various vowels. Where possible, a rule is given.)
- (1) <u>van</u> 'characteristic mode' occurs with a large set of transitive roots (tr) and (derived) transitive verb stems (tvs) to form intransitive verb stems.

lûtšvan 'gore characteristically' from tr: lûtš 'gore it'
tšánubtasvan 'characteristically teach, be a teacher' from tvs: tšánubtas
'teach him'

(2)  $\underline{Vx}$  seems to occur freely with roots and stems of almost all major classes to form intransitive stems.  $\underline{V}$  is realized unpredictably as  $\underline{a}$ ,  $\underline{e}$ ,  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{o}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .

tákix '(to) dry' from ntr (shown with stativizer): tákin 'dry'
tšápax 'be taken care of, have affairs arranged by officials' from tr: tšáp
'roll it up (as rope)'
k'ópox 'talk' from nr: k'óp 'word, language'
tšúk'omax 'wash clothes' from ns (shown with possession): atšúk'om 'your

washing of clothes'.

natex 'grow tall, long' from sr: nat 'tall'

mé?munax 'meow (as cat)' from ivs: mé?mun 'characteristically meow'

tšībax 'be two (as in two-hearted' from numr: tšīb 'two' as in tstšībax

yó?nton (his heart is two) 'he is doubting'

In some cases, the stem formed with  $\underline{Vx}$  never occurs without at least one other suffix.

vá?axtik 'they are standing' from cr. (shown with numeral): tšá?vó? 'two bipeds' (vá? alternates with vó?).

váyaxtik 'they are asleep' from ir: váy 'sleep'
tšúkaxtik 'they are tied' from tr-nr: tšúk 'tie it, wool sash'
xóbelaxel 'one on his way to or from Las Casas' from nr: xóbel 'San Cristóbal Las Casas'

In some cases, the stem with which  $\underline{Vx}$  occurs, does not itself occur alone. Such stems are indicated below by an asterisk (\*). (The suffix  $\underline{tas}$  loses its vowel when preceding  $\underline{Vx}$ .)

xók'tsax 'be caused to be snagged, (e.g. on a thorn bush)' from \*xók'tas; Cf. tvs: xók'-an 'hang it up.'

Stative stems occurring with  $\underline{Vx}$  lose a vowel; transitive stems do not.

k'ſšnax 'become warm' from svs: k'ſšin 'warm'

<u>tšík'inax</u> 'perspires' from \*tšík'in; Cf. nr (shown with possession): stšík'

'his perspiration'.

Neutral stems occurring with  $\underline{Vx}$  show vowel dissimilation,  $\underline{i}$  occurring after back vowels of root,  $\underline{u}$  after others.

<u>bált'šux</u> 'roll over and over' from \*<u>bált'š</u>; Cf. tr: <u>bál</u> 'roll it up'. půšk'ix 'double over itself' from \*<u>půšk'</u>; Cf. tr: <u>půš</u> 'fold it'.

(3) <u>Ub</u> 'developmental' occurs with a large set of stative roots and a few roots of other classes to form intransitive stems. Most stems occurring with <u>Ub</u> show vowel dissimilation, i occurring after back vowels of stem, <u>u</u> after others. When the stem vowel is <u>o</u>, however, the suffix vowel is also <u>o</u>.

p'fxub 'become wise' from sr: p'fx 'wise'.
kûšib '(to) rust, mold' from nr: kûš 'rust, mold'.
mê?elub 'become old (of women)' from ss: mê?el 'old (of women)'
šókob 'be unoccupied' from ntr (shown with stativizer): šókol 'empty, unoccupied'.

In some constructions the stem formed with <u>Ub</u> never occurs without at least one other suffix following.

váyubtas 'put him to sleep' from ivs: \*váyub; Cf. ir: váy 'sleep'. tšánubtas 'teach him' from ivs: \*tšánub; Cf. tr: tšán 'learn it'.

(4) <u>Cun</u> 'characteristic motion or sound' occurs with a large set of neutral roots and a few roots of other classes to form intransitive stems. C is a reduplication of the initial consonant of the root.

mêkmun 'walk with a limp' from ntr. (shown with stativizer): mêkan 'lame' lâ'lun 'characteristically bend (as boards when being carried)' from tr:

1a? 'bend it (as a board)'.

p'ftp'un 'go leaping along' from ir: p'ft 'jump'.

kôtkun 'characteristically move on more than two legs (as airplane, car, horse, etc.)' from cr (shown with stativizer): kôtol 'standing on more than two legs'.

(5) et 'characteristic state or sound' occurs with a large set of neutral roots and a few roots of other classes to form intransitive stems.

<u>k'fset</u> 'be characteristically warm (as day when sun shines)' from ntr (shown with stativizer): <u>k'fsin</u> 'warm'

kilet 'characteristically drag (as body of snake)' from tr: kil 'drag it'
kotet 'characteristically stand on more than two legs' from cr (shown with
stativizer): kotol 'standing on more than two legs'

- <u>xamet</u> 'characteristically be open (as landscape when weather is clear)' from i-t-nr: <u>xam</u> 'open, open it, meaning'
- (6)  $\underline{i}$  'characteristic stance' occurs with a set of neutral roots and a few roots of other classes to form intransitive stems.
- náki 'sit down, live in a place' from ntr (shown with stativizer): nákal 'seated, at home'.

  vá?i 'stand up' from cr (shown with stativizer): vá?al 'standing as a biped'.

  páti 'lie (back up) face down' from nr (with possession): apát 'your back'.
- (7)  $\underline{Vn}$  occurs with a small set of noun roots and a few neutral and transitive roots to form intransitive stems.  $\underline{V}$  is realized as  $\underline{a}$ ,  $\underline{i}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .
- kábin 'urinate' from nr (with possession): skáb 'his urine'.

  tsé?in 'laugh, smile' from ntr (shown with nominalizer): tsé?ex 'laughter'.

  núpun 'be married' from tr: núp 'meet her'.
- (8) <u>av</u> occurs with a small set of transitive roots and a few roots of other classes to form intransitive stems.
- <u>xâlav</u> 'weave' from tr: <u>xâl</u> 'weave it'.
  <u>mûlav</u> 'commit adultery' from nr (shown with possession): <u>smûl</u> 'his fault, error, sin'.
  <u>k'éšav</u> 'be ashamed, embarrassed' from tr: <u>k'éš</u> 'exchange it'.

The suffix <u>av</u> occasionally occurs with  $\underline{Vx}$  without any notable change in meaning. The vowel of av is affected unpredictably.

<u>tšaxálav</u> or <u>tšaxálovax</u> 'you are weaving'. <u>imúlav</u> or <u>imúlivax</u> 'he committed adultery'.

- 10.6. Transitivizing Suffixes. There are five transitivizing suffixes: Vn, es, tas, ta, and V.
- (9)  $\underline{Vn}$  occurs with large sets of neutral and noun roots and with a few roots and stems of almost all major classes to form transitive stems.  $\underline{V}$  is realized as  $\underline{a}$ ,  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{o}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .

nákan 'seat him' from ntr (shown with stativizer): nákal 'seated'.

k'ópon 'talk to him' from nr: k'óp 'word, language'.

pák'an 'mend it' from tr: pák' 'mud it (as walls of a house)'

búsan 'pile it up' from cr (shown with stativizer): búsul 'in a pile'.

2áxvalin 'use him as boss, make him boss' from ns (shown with possession):

káxval 'my boss'

tasin 'use it as padding' from t-nr (shown with noun possession): atas
'your padding for carrying loads'.

k'asubin 'take care of him, pity him' from ivs: k'asub 'become sore'.

In some constructions the stem with which <u>Vn</u> occurs, never occurs alone. Stems formed with <u>tas</u> 'transitive causative' lose the vowel of this stem formative with resulting cluster occurring at the end of the first syllable of the stem.

méltsan 'repair it, make it' from \*méltas; Cf. cr (with stativizer): mélel 'it is true'.

Neutral stems occurring with  $\underline{Vn}$  show vowel dissimilation,  $\underline{i}$  occurring after back vowels of root,  $\underline{u}$  after others.

bált'sun 'roll it over and over' from \*bált's; Cf. tr: bál 'roll it up'.

xêlp'un 'hang it over the shoulder' from \*xélp'; Cf. tr: xél 'change it'.

búsk'in 'throw down in a pile (as beans)' from \*búsk'; Cf. cr: bús 'a pile'.

(10) <u>es</u> 'transitive causative' occurs with a large set of intransitive roots and (derived) intransitive stems and a few roots of other classes to form transitive stems.

lók'es 'take it out' from ir: lók' '(to) exit'.

nópexes 'make it approach' from ivs: nópex 'approach'.

nóxes 'fill it' from sr: nóx 'full'.

p'óles 'increase it (as flock of chickens)' from i-nr: p'ól 'increase'.

kúses 'cause to live' from ntr (shown with stativizer): kúšul 'alive'.

(11) <u>tas</u> 'transitive causative' occurs with a set of (derived) intransitive stems and with a few neutral and noun roots and (derived) noun stems to form transitive stems.

<u>lékubtas</u> 'make it become good' from ivs: <u>lékub</u> 'become good'.

t'šúltas 'bless it' from ntr (shown with nominalizer and possession):
at'šúlel 'your soul'.

nīt'šontas 'cause him to become one's son' from nr (shown with noun posession): anīt'šon 'your son'.

bfiltas 'name him' from ns: bfil (a name'.

(12) ta occurs with intransitive, noun and neutral roots and (derived) stems to form transitive stems.

póšta 'give him medicine' from nr: póš 'liquor'
kólta 'help him' from ir: kól 'be freed'
'linta 'hate him' from ivs: 'lin 'become angry'
'linta 'shout at him' from ntr (shown with intransitivizer): 'lin 'shout,
holler'
bóxta 'blood-let him' from tr: bóx 'cut it'
lô'ilta 'relate it (as a story)' from ns: lô'il 'a story, tale'
k'éšta 'replace it' from tr: k'éš 'exchange it'

(13)  $\underline{V}$  occurs with a few roots and stems to form transitive stems.  $\underline{V}$  is realized as  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{u}$ , or  $\underline{a}$ .

t'sība 'write it' from ntr (shown with intransitivizer): t'sībax 'write'
tšāpa 'arrange it (a matter)' from tr: tšāp 'roll it up (as rope)'
tūki 'scatter it (as corn)' from ir: tūk 'broke out (as measles)'

In some constructions with  $\underline{V}$ , there is a change of stem vowel.

náu 'spin it (as wool)' from nr: nó 'thread'

In some constructions with  $\underline{V}$ , there is a loss of stem vowel.

k'ſśna 'warm it' from svs: k'ſśin 'warm'
16?1a 'deceive him' from ns: 16?11 'a story, tale'

- 10.7. Stativizing Suffixes. There are four stativizing suffixes: tik, ROOT, Vn, and um.
- (14) tik, sometimes with the meaning of 'it's a place of', occurs with a large set of intransitive (derived) stems, a large set of stative roots, and a

few noun and stative stems to form stative stems. The intransitive stems which occur with this suffix never occur alone.

nákaxtik 'they are sitting down' from ivs: \*nákax; Cf. ivs: nák-i, té?tik 'a place of trees, a forest' from nr: té? 'tree, stick' ?ák'ubaltik 'darkness' from ns: ?ák'ubal 'night' nómtik 'few and far between, rare' from sr: nóm 'far'

Stative stems which occur with this suffix are formed by reduplication of the root. This reduplicated form never occurs alone.

sáksáktik 'whitish' (from svs: sák 'white')

(15) A ROOT is a reduplication of the root, and occurs with stative and classifier roots to form stative stems.

k'únk'ún 'slowly' from k'ún 'soft'
mélmél 'one after another' from cr (shown with numeral): xmél 'one trip
(as carrying water)'

(16)  $\underline{Vn}$  occurs with a few transitive, intransitive, neutral and noun roots to form stative stems.  $\underline{V}$  is realized as  $\underline{e}$ ,  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{o}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .

2ápun 'carbuncle' from ir: 2áp 'crack (as a mud wall)'
tákin 'dry' from ntr (shown with intransitivizer): tákix '(to) dry'

Three vocative statives are formed with <u>Vn</u>:

bólin 'brother-in-law (of man)' from nr: ból 'brother-in-law (of man)'
víšin 'older sister' from nr: víš 'older sister'
mú?in 'sister-in-law (of man), brother-in-law (of woman)' from nr: mú?
'sister-in-law(of man), brother-in-law (of woman)'

(17) um occurs with a few transitive roots to form stative stems.

t'uxum 'pretty' from tr: t'ux 'choose it'

10.8. Nominalizing Suffixes. There are twelve nominalizing suffixes: A1, a1, 11, e1, Ob, Ex, Om, o1, et, i, its, its.

(18) Al occurs with almost all optionally possessed noun roots with the meaning of impersonal possession. It also occurs with almost all numerals and a large set of stative roots as well as roots of other classes to form noun stems. A is realized as  $\underline{a}$ ,  $\underline{e}$ ,  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{o}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .

tšenek'ul from nr: tšenek' 'beans' as in

stšének'ul tšóbtik 'the cornfield's beans (unharvested beans)'

tšének'ul-váx 'bean tamales'

totilal from ns: totil 'the chief one' as in stotilal k'in 'the fiesta's chief one'

tšá?vá?al from num: tšá?vó? 'two people' as in

stšá?vá?al víniketik (their two-personness the men) 'the two of the men' atšá?vá?al-mé? (your two-personness-mother) 'your stepmother'

p'fxil 'wisdom' from sr: p'fx 'wise'

vi?nal 'hunger' from ntr (shown with intransitivizer): vi?nax 'be hungry'

xámalil 'width' from svs: xámal 'wide'

With some intransitive verb stems there is a change of vowel.

?ák'ubal 'night' from ivs: ?ík'ub 'become dark'

(19)  $\underline{al}$  occurs with almost all optionally possessed noun roots, all personal names as well as some noun and stative stems to form noun stems. Noun stems so formed may be the subject of an interrogative clause.

té?al from nr: té? 'tree, stick' as in k'úsi té?al 'which tree, stick' tšámelal from ns: tšámel 'sickness' as in k'úsuk no?oš tšámelal 'whatever sickness'

x?ántrešal from ns: x?ántreš 'Andrew' as in mút'šu x?ántrešal 'which Andrew'

ból-k'ópal from nc: ból-k'óp (ignorant words) 'profane language' as in k'úsi bólk'ópal 'which profane language'

xûnukal from svs: xûnuk 'any one' as in bû xûnukal 'which one'

(20)  $\underline{11}$ , with the meaning of unpossession occurs with all obligatorily possessed noun roots, with a few roots of other classes and some noun compounds describing sickness to form noun stems.

k'û'?il 'a dress, blouse, shirt' from nr (with inflection): ak'û? 'your dress, blouse, shirt'

<u>t'šáyil</u> 'smoke' from i-tr: <u>t'šá</u>y 'lose, lose it'

k'úš-t'šút-il 'stomach ache' from sr: k'úš 'it hurts' plus t'šút 'abdomen' plus nominalizer

When some stative roots combine with II there is a change of yowel.

málal 'husband' from sr: mól 'he is old'

(21) el, with the meaning of 'act of', occurs with all transitive roots and radicals, with or without referent, with most intransitive roots and a few intransitive radicals to form noun stems.

k'ušubinel 'act of pitying him, taking care of him' from tvs: k'ušubin 'pity him, take care of him!

kápel 'act of mixing it' from tr: káp 'mix it'

tšúkbel 'act of tying it for him' from tr. with referent: tšúkbe 'tie it for him!

tši?imbel 'act of accompanying him for her' from tvs. with referent: tši?imbe 'accompany him for her'

muel 'act of ascending' from ir: mu 'ascend'

t'sisomaxel 'act of sewing' from ivs: t'sisomax 'sew'

(22) Ob, with meaning of 'instrument' or 'place of' occurs with a large set of transitive roots and a few roots and radicals of other classes to form noun stems. O is realized as a, e, o, or u.

pásob 'instrument for making' from tr: pás 'do, make' as in pásob-váx 'a press for making tortillas'

<u>váyeb</u> 'place for sleeping, bed' from ir: <u>váy</u> 'sleep' <u>xóyob</u> from ntr 'shown with stativizer): <u>xóyol</u> 'encircling' as in <u>xóyob-ná</u> 'a building built around a central patio'

půkub from i-tr: půk 'scatter (it)' as in půkub-tán 'dish used for mixing lime with water (for use in cooking corn)!

When stative verb stems occur with Ob the final stem vowel is lost.

nákleb 'place of sitting, a seat' from svs: nákal 'he is seated'

Ob occurs with some transitive verb stems which never occur alone.

k'axaneb 'harvesting instrument' from tvs: k'axan; Cf. tr k'ax 'harvest it'

as in <u>k'axaneb-te?</u> 'piece of bone used for cutting open cornhusks when harvesting'

- (23) Ex, with the meaning of 'customary or habitual act', occurs with a few stative and intransitive stems and a few roots of various classes to form noun stems.  $\underline{\mathbf{E}}$  is realized as  $\underline{\mathbf{e}}$  or  $\underline{\mathbf{o}}$ .
- kóltavanex 'act of habitually helping' from ivs: kóltavan 'be habitually help-ful'
- tsé?ex 'laughter' from ntr (shown with intransitivizer): tsé?in 'laugh'
  tšábiex 'customary act of taking care of' from tvs: tšábi 'take care of it'
  as in x-tšábiex-préšu (one who customarily takes care of a jail) 'a jailer'
  k'áxox 'customary act of harvesting' from tr: k'áx 'harvest it'

When stative verb stems occur with Ex, the final stem vowel is lost.

náklex 'act of living with in-laws as part of marriage contract' from svs:

nákal 'be at home, sit down'

Some constructions formed by the occurrence of  $\underline{Ex}$  do not occur alone. The final vowel of the stative stem is lost on the occurrence of  $\underline{Ex}$ .

- xóylex from svs: xóyol 'encircling' as in sxóylexal balumil (its encircling the world) 'all around the world'
- (24)  $\underline{Om}$ , with meaning of 'act' or 'process', occurs with a few roots and stems of various classes to form noun stems.  $\underline{O}$  is realized as  $\underline{i}$ ,  $\underline{o}$ , or  $\underline{u}$ .

tšúk'om 'washing of clothes' from tr: tšúk' 'wash it (clothes)'
sútum 'act of returning' from ir: sút 'return' as in sútum-?ík' 'whirlwind'
t'síbaxom 'act of writing' from ivs: t'síbax 'write'

When Om occurs with some transitive stems, there is a loss of vowel.

?fkatsnom 'act of carrying loads' from tvs: ?fkatsin 'carry it as a load'

Constructions formed with neutral roots and Om do not occur alone, but occur with intransitivizers to form intransitive stems.

<u>Pátisim</u> 'act of sneezing' as in ivs: <u>Pátisimax</u> 'sneeze'

(25)  $\underline{ol}$ , with the meaning of 'act of', occurs with a very few intransitive roots to form noun stems. All these roots have the shape  $\underline{CVC}$  plus  $\underline{in}$ , with the final  $\underline{n}$  becoming  $\underline{m}$  before  $\underline{ol}$ .

2átimol 'bathing' from ir: 2átin 'bathe'
táximol 'game, play' from ir: táxin 'play'

(26) et occurs with two roots to form noun stems.

póket 'clay basin used for washing hands' from tr: pók 'wash it (a part of the body)' k'ák'et 'a burn' from ir: k'ák' 'burn itself'

(27) i occurs with a very few neutral roots to form noun stems.

táki 'dryness' from ntr (shown with stativizer): tákin 'dry' as in táki-tí?il (dryness-opening) 'thirst'

(28) its occurs with a very few roots to form noun stems.

<u>váyitš</u> 'a dream' from ir: <u>vá</u>y 'sleep'

(29) it's occurs with a very few roots to form noun stems.

ximit's 'a native slingshot' from tr: xim 'throw it'

- 10.9. Non-class-changing Affixes. There are eight affixes which are not class changers and therefore are not included in the preceding section. These affixes which add other meaning to the stem, do not come under what is usually considered as inflection, and so are mentioned in this special section. There are five suffixes: ilan, an, t's, p', k'; and three prefixes, x/ax, x, and 8.
- (1) <u>ilan</u>, with the meaning of 'repeated action', occurs with almost all transitive, intransitive, and transitive passive stems.

k'élilan 'repeatedly look at it' from tvs: k'él 'look at it'
bátilan 'repeatedly go' from ivs: bát 'go'
k'ánilambat 'be repeatedly asked for it' from tps: k'ámbat 'be asked for it'

(2)  $\underline{an}$ , with the meaning of 'multiple action of the same kind', occurs with transitive roots, and intransitive stems derived with  $\underline{Vx}$ . When  $\underline{an}$  occurs with transitive roots, the stem so formed may occur reduplicated.

milan 'do a lot of killing of them' from tvs: mil 'kill it' (NM390) maxanmaxan 'do a lot of hitting of them' from tvs: max 'hit him'

On the occurrence of an with intransitive stems, there is a vowel change.

<u>léblaxan</u> 'blink (as stars, lights of a distant city, or fireflies)' from ivs: <u>léblex</u> 'flash (as lightning, fireworks)'

(3)  $\underline{t'}\underline{s}$ , with the meaning of 'rolling over motion', has been found to occur with a very few transitive roots forming a neutral stem. The derivational suffix which follows this affix determines the class of the stem, whether transitive or intransitive.

bált'šun 'roll it over and over (as a large stone)' and bált'šux 'roll over and over (as a rock down the mountain)' from \*bált'š;

Cf. tr: bál 'roll it up (as a grass mat)'

(4) p!, with the meaning of 'revolving motion', occurs with a very small set of transitive, intransitive and neutral roots forming neutral stems. The derivational suffix which follows this affix determines the stem class, whether transitive or intransitive.

xélp'un 'carry it slung from the shoulder (as a woven bag or gun)' from \*xélp'; Cf. tr: xél 'change it'
xóyp'ix 'turn around' from \*xóyp'; Cf. ntr 'shown with stativizer): xóyol 'be in a circle'
sútp'ix 'return in a round-about away' from \*sútp'; Cf. ir: sút 'return'

(5)  $\underline{k}'$ , with the meaning of 'turning over motion', occurs with a very small set of transitive, neutral, classifier, and noun roots forming neutral stems. The derivational suffix which follows this affix determines the stem class.

pûšk'in 'bend it over (as a nail)' and pûšk'ix 'double over itself' from
\*pûšk': Cf. tr: pûš 'fold it over'

válk'un 'turn it over (as the page of a book)' and válk'ux 'turn over by itself (as the page of a book)' from \*válk'; Cf. ntr: vál (meaning unknown) búsk'in 'throw it down in a pile (as money, beans)' from \*búsk'; Cf. cr

(shown with numeral): <u>tšá?būs</u> 'two piles (of beans, money, corn, etc.)' <u>pātk'ux</u> 'fall in (as wall of a house)' from \*<u>pātk'</u>; Cf. nr (shown with possession): apāt 'your back'

- (6) x/ax occurs with a small set of noun stems and a few noun roots to form 'agentive' noun stems. When preceded by a pronoun, it has the form ax.
- x?ábtel 'a worker,' from ns: ?ábtel 'work'

  kax?ábtel 'my hired help'

  xtšónolaxel 'one who habitaully sells' from ns: tšónolaxel 'act of habitually selling'

x?élek' 'a thief' from nr: ?élek' 'act of stealing'
xpás-résal 'a cantor in the Catholic church' from nc: pás-résal 'act of reciting prayers'

(7) and (8) There are two non-class-changing prefixes which are gender remnants and occur with names;  $\underline{x}$  occurs with all men's names,  $\underline{\underline{x}}$  with all women's names.

xpétul 'Peter' x?ántreš 'Andrew' šlél 'Manuela' špét 'Petrona'

## **MORPHOPHONEMICS**

Two kinds of morphophonemes are dealt with in this paper: The realization of morphemes as strings of morphophonemes, and then the realization of morphophonemes as strings of phonemes. The first type of realization has been dealt with throughout the study in the presentation of individual morphemes; the second type is discussed in this chapter.

The statements given below have been worked out principally in the analysis of the Tzotzil verb phrase. This being the case, they are incomplete; and, in particular, closer attention to derivational affixes will require further clarification of the situation.

Only those statements are made which involve diverse (non-one-to-one) realizations of morphophonemes. The environments which are stated as relevant to particular realizations are morphophonemic environments. The statements are <u>not</u> ordered except in the case of a series of statements concerning a single morphophoneme. In short, the statements are of a 'stratificational' variety.

Any consonant morphophoneme except b is elided when preceding itself.

INCOMPL-FIRST-k'ót-PL 'we (excl) will arrive, 'tš-i-k'ó[t]-tutik, tšik'ó[Ø]tutik, tšik'otutik.

INCOMPL-THIRD-šén 'he is vomiting, 't[š]-Ø-šén, t[Ø]šén, tšén.

tsób-REF-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it has been gathered, 'tsó[b]-be-RI-Ø-Ø,

tsó[b]bøil, tsóbbil.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{y}$  is realized phonemically as the null element after  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  within the syllable, as well as before  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  or  $\underline{\underline{s}}$ .

INCOMPL-THIRD-7ák'-THIRD 'he will give it,'  $t = \emptyset - [y] - 2k' - \emptyset$ ,  $t = \emptyset - [y] - 2k' - \emptyset$ ,  $t = \emptyset - [y] - 2k' - \emptyset$ ,

COMPL-láx-THIRD-šókobtas-SUBJN-THIRD 'he emptied it, ' $\emptyset$ -láx-[y]šókobtas- $\emptyset$ - $\emptyset$ , láx[ $\emptyset$ ]šókobtas, láx šókobtas.

INCOMPL-FIRST-THIRD-sá?-FIRST 'she is looking for me, 'tš-i-[y]-sá?-un, tši[0]sá?un, tšisá?un.

Otherwise, morphophonemes  $\underline{k}$ ,  $\underline{v}$ , and  $\underline{y}$  are realized phonemically as  $\underline{x}$ ,  $\underline{\emptyset}$  (null), and  $\underline{s}$ , respectively, when preceding a stressed syllable beginning with any consonant except  $\underline{2}$ .

FIRST-man-PERF-THIRD 'I have bought it, '[k]-man-ox-Ø, [x]manox.

SECOND-tot 'your father, 'a[v]-tot, a[Ø]tot, atot.

THIRD-p's-PERF-THIRD 'he has measured it, '[y]-p's-ox-Ø, [s]p'sox.

In all other environments, the morphophonemes  $\underline{k}$ ,  $\underline{v}$ , and  $\underline{y}$  are realized as the phonemes k, v, and y.

FIRST-?ak'-PERF-THIRD 'I have given it, ' [k]-?ak'-ox-Ø, [k]Øak'ox, akAk'ox.

SECOND-akC 'your chile, ' aC '-?aC 'your chile, ' aC 'your chile, '

The morphophoneme  $\underline{2}$  is realized phonemically as the null element following  $\underline{k}$ ,  $\underline{v}$ , or  $\underline{y}$ , or preceding any two consonants which do not include  $\underline{2}$ ; otherwise, it is realized phonemically as  $\underline{2}$ .

FIRST-? al-PERF-REF-THIRD 'I have told her, ' $k-[?]al-ox-be-\emptyset$ ,  $k[\emptyset]aloxbe$ , kaloxbe.

COMPL-lax-SECOND-?a?i-SUBJN-THIRD 'you heard it,' \$\mathref{g}\$-lax-av-[?]a?i-\$\mathref{g}\_0, \frac{1}{2}\axi \angle \frac{1}{2}\air \frac{1}{

COMPL-THIRD-71-THIRD 'he saw him,' i-0-y-[?]1-0, iy[0]11, iy11.

tál-INCL-t'šún-SUBJN-PL-THIRD 'Come, let's believe it,' 1á[?]-k-t'šún0-tik-0, lá[0]xt'šúntik, lá xt'šúntik.

COMPL-FIRST-?ôtš 'I entered, 'n-i-[?]ôtš, ni[?]ôtš.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  is realized as  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  when preceding  $\underline{\underline{t}}$  or  $\underline{\underline{t}}$ ! followed by  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  or  $\underline{\underline{s}}$ , and when otherwise preceding stress group final  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  noncontiguously within the stress group.

TLESS-THIRD-tsé'in 'he laughs,'  $[\underline{s}]$ - $\emptyset$ -tsé'in,  $[\underline{s}]$ tsé'in.

TLESS-THIRD-t's $\overline{b}$ ax 'he writes,'  $[\underline{s}]$ - $\emptyset$ -t's $\overline{b}$ ax,  $[\underline{s}]$ t's $\overline{b}$ ax.

TLESS-THIRD-1 $\underline{s}$ s 'he grows,'  $[\underline{s}]$ - $\emptyset$ -t' $\underline{s}$ f,  $[\underline{s}]$ t' $\underline{s}$ f.

TLESS-THIRD-1 $\underline{a}$ ts 'it stacks up,'  $[\underline{s}]$ - $\emptyset$ -1 $\underline{a}$ ts,  $[\underline{s}]$ 1 $\underline{a}$ ts.

TLESS-THIRD-k' $\underline{a}$ s 'it breaks,'  $[\underline{s}]$ - $\emptyset$ -k' $\underline{a}$ s,  $[\underline{s}]$ k' $\underline{a}$ s.

 $\underline{\underline{s}}$  is realized phonemically as  $\underline{\underline{i}}$  when following  $\underline{\underline{t}}$  and preceding  $\underline{\underline{k}}$  plus any consonant except  $\underline{\underline{2}}$ .

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-tá-THIRD 'I'll find it, '  $t[\underline{s}] = \emptyset - k - t\hat{a} - \emptyset$ ,  $t[\underline{i}] \times t\hat{a}$ . INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-k'él-THIRD 'I'll look at it, '  $t[\underline{s}] = \emptyset - k - k'\hat{e}l - \emptyset$ ,  $t[\underline{i}] \times k'\hat{e}l$ .

 $\underline{\underline{s}}$  is realized as the null element before any two consonants which do not include glottal.

INCOMPL-THIRD-pan-THIRD 'she is boiling it,'  $t[\underline{s}]=\emptyset-y-pan-\emptyset$ ,  $t[\emptyset]$  span, tspan.

INCOMPL-THIRD-nop-THIRD 'he will think about it,'  $t[\underline{s}]=\emptyset-y-nop-\emptyset$ ,  $t[\emptyset]$  snop, tsnop.

Otherwise, <u>s</u> is realized phonemically as s.

INCOMPL-SECOND-?átin 'you are bathing,' t[\$]-a-?átin, t[\$]a?átin.
INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-?ák'-REF-THIRD 'I will give it to him,'

t[\$]-\$\mathrew{\beta}\_{-k}-?ák'-be-\mathrew{\beta}\_{-k}, t[\beta]k\mathrew{\beta}\beta k'be.

INCOMPL-SECOND-\$\hat{a}\text{nav} 'you will walk,' t\hat{\beta}-a-[\beta]\hat{a}\text{nav}, t\hat{\beta}[\beta]\hat{a}\text{nav}.

INCOMPL-THIRD-FIRST-\$\hat{a}\hat{\beta}-THIRD 'I will chew it, 't\hat{\beta}-\hat{\beta}-k-[\beta][\hat{\beta}]\hat{\beta}]-\beta,

tix[\beta][\hat{\beta}].

The morphophoneme  $\underline{R}$ , a chameleon vowel, takes the value of a preceding stressed vowel, unless an unstressed vowel intervenes. In the latter case,  $\underline{R}$  is realized as  $\underline{i}$ .

pák'-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it is stuck on, 'pák'-[R]1-Ø-Ø, pák'[a]1.

lútš-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it is roosting, 'lútš-[R]1-Ø-Ø, lútš[u]1.

pák'-REF-PERF-PASS-THIRD 'it has been stuck on, 'pák'-be-[R]1-Ø,

pák'bØ[i]1, pák'bi1.

kómes-REF-PERF-PASS-FIRST 'I have been left behind, 'kómes-be-[R]1
un, kómesbØ[i]lun, kómesbilun.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{U}$  is realized as  $\underline{u}$  when preceding  $\underline{ku}$  or  $\underline{ko}$ , or following  $\underline{ot}$ , and as  $\underline{i}$  elsewhere. Its function is marginal, in that it only occurs in the realization of one morpheme— $\underline{Uk}$  (plural)—and  $\underline{ot}$ ,  $\underline{ku}$ , and  $\underline{ko}$  also represent extremely limited morphemic environments. The alternative, however, is to introduce  $\underline{Uk}$  as  $\underline{uk}$ — $\underline{ik}$ . The present solution seems the lesser of the two evils.

COMPL-láx-THIRD-?11-SUBJN-PL-FIRST they saw me, \* Ø-láx-y-?11-Ø-[U]kún, láxyØ11[u]kun, láx yflukun.

COMPL-Iáx-THIRD-?11-SUBJN-PL-SECOND 'they saw you, ' \$\beta\$-1\hat{ax-y-?11-} \$\empsilon = \begin{align\*} U \| \text{k-ot}, & \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \| \frac{1\hat{axy}\pi\left\* I \

COMPL-14x-THIRD-?11-SUBJN-SECOND-PL 'he saw you (pl), ' \$\theta\$-14x-y-\frac{211-\theta}{-0}-ot-[U]k, \frac{14xy\theta}{16xy\theta}10\text{Suk}.

COMPL-lax-THIRD-? $\vec{n}$ -SUBJN-PL-THIRD 'they saw him,'  $\not = 1$ -lax-y-? $\vec{n}$ - $\vec{u}$ -

When unstressed, the morphophoneme  $\underline{e}$  is realized as phoneme  $\underline{e}$  when preceding stress-group final  $\underline{Uk}$ , whether or not  $\underline{o}$  intervenes; and as the null element elsewhere before  $\underline{o}$ ,  $\underline{u}$ ,  $\underline{a}$ ,  $\underline{R}$ , or  $\underline{Uk}$ ; otherwise it is realized as  $\underline{e}$ .

COMPL-THIRD-741-REF-PL-THIRD 'they said it to him,' i-Ø-y?41-b[e]-Uk-Ø, iyØálb[e]ik, iyálbeik.

 $\frac{\text{mán-REF-IMPV-SECOND-PL}}{\text{mám-bl}}$  'buy it for him/them,'  $\frac{\text{mán-bl}}{\text{mám-bl}} = \frac{g}{-o} - \frac{g}{-Uk}$ , mámble løik, mámbeik.

COMPL-SECOND-THIRD-?ál-REF-SECOND 'he said it to you,' n-a-y-?ál-b[e]-ot, nay@alb[ø]ot, nay@albot.

mú-THIRD-FIRST-tšón-PERF-REF-SUBJN-THIRD 'I have not sold it for him,' mú-Ø-k-tšón-ox-b[e]-uk-Ø, múxtšónoxb[Ø]uk, mú xtšónoxbuk.

COMPL-FIRST-?al-REF-PASS 'I was told,' n-i-?al-b[e]-at, ni?alb@]at, ni?albat.

pás-REF-PASS-THIRD 'it has been made,' pás-b[e]-R1-Ø, pásb[Ø]il, pásbil. COMPL-SECOND-THIRD-?ál-REF-PL-SECOND 'they said it to you,'

 $\underline{n-a-y-?\acute{a}l-b[e]-Uk-ot}$ ,  $\underline{nay@\acute{a}lb[@]ukot}$ ,  $\underline{nay\'{a}lbukot}$ .  $\underline{t\'{a}l-PERF-THIRD}$  'he has come,'  $\underline{t\'{a}l-em-@}$ ,  $\underline{t\'{a}lem}$ .

When unstressed, the morphophoneme  $\underline{o}$  is realized as the null element before  $\underline{U}$ ,  $\underline{u}$ , and  $\underline{a}$ ; otherwise, it is realized as  $\underline{o}$ .

SECOND-?ál-REF-IMPV-PL 'Say (you pl) it to him, ' Ø-?ál-be-[o]-Uk, ?álbe[Ø]ik, ?álbeik.

SECOND-pás-REF-IMPV-FIRST 'Do it for me, ' Ø-pás-be-[o]-un, pásbø Ø]un, pásbun.

bát-IMPV-SECOND 'Go!' bát-[o]-an, bát[ø]an, bátan.

When unstressed, the morphophoneme  $\underline{i}$  is realized as the null element before  $\underline{a}$  or  $\underline{u}$ ; otherwise, it is realized as  $\underline{i}$ .

INCOMPL-FIRST-SECOND-tá-FIRST 'you will find me, ' tš-[i]-av-tá-un, tš[0]a0táun, tšatáun.

COMPL-FIRST-SECOND-?ák'-REF-FIRST 'you gave it to me,' n-[i]-av?ák'-be-un, n[ø]avøák'bøun, navák'bun
COMPL-FIRST-SECOND-?ák'-REF-FIRST 'you gave it to me,' n-[i]-av-

COMPL-THIRD- ?atin 'he bathed, '[i]- $\emptyset$ -?at[i]n, [i]?at[i]n.

There are a few derived verb stems which end in the vowel i like tšābi

'take care of.' This vowel is a derivational suffix and though unstressed is not elided before another yowel.

COMPL-FIRST-tšáb[i]-PASS 'I was taken care of, 'n-i-tšáb[i]-at, <u>nitšábiat</u>, COMPL-INCL-t'úš[i]-PL 'we got wet, 'n-ix-t'úš[i]-ukutik, nixt'úšiukutik.

This might best be accounted for by postulating the loss of a consonant after  $\underline{i}$ , since most derivational suffixes have the form VC.

When unstressed the morphophoneme  $\underline{u}$  is realized as the null element following u; otherwise it is realized as u.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{t}$  is realized as  $\underline{\underline{s}}$  before  $\underline{\underline{U}}$ ; otherwise it is realized as  $\underline{\underline{t}}$ .

INCOMPL-SECOND-THIRD-ták-REF-SECOND-PL 'he will send it for you (pl), 'tš-a-y-ták-be-o[t]-Uk, tšastákb%o[š]uk, tšastákbošuk.

kól-PERF-SECOND-PL 'you (pl) have become free, 'kól-em-o[t]-Uk, kólemo[š]uk.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{x}$  is realized as the null element before any two consonants and when preceded by an unstressed vowel and followed by a stressed vowel; otherwise it is realized as  $\underline{x}$ .

INCOMPL-INCL-THIRD-máx-PL 'they hit us (incl), 'tš-i[x]-y-máx-ukutik, tši[Ø]smáxukutik, tšismáxukutik.

COMPL-SECOND-xúl 'you arrived home,' n-a-[x]úl, na[Ø]úl, naúl.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{n}$  is realized as  $\underline{m}$  before  $\underline{b}$ ; otherwise it is realized as  $\underline{n}$ .

INCOMPL-THIRD-pán-REF-THIRD 'she is boiling it for him,'

<u>tš-Ø-y-pá[n]-be-Ø, tøspá[m]be, tspámbe.</u>

<u>COMPL-láx-SECOND-bón-REF-SUBJN-FIRST</u> 'you painted it for me,'

Ø-láx-av-bó[n]-be-Ø-un, láxaøbó[m]bøun, láx abómbun.

The morphophoneme  $\underline{m}$  is realized as  $\underline{n}$  when preceded by  $\underline{\hat{v}mV}$ ; otherwise it is realized as  $\underline{m}$ .

## **INDEX**

| 1                                   | M-m-41 00 01                  |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Accompaniment Noun Phrase 60-61, 86 | Negation 28-31                |
| Active clause 9, 12                 | Passive 9                     |
| Additive phrases 85-87              | Permission 45-46              |
| Adjunctive phrase 82-83             | Quantification 37-38          |
| Adverbial constituents 9            | Question 23-28                |
| Adverbial positions 18-19           | Quotation 49-51               |
| Agent 9                             | Referential 13-14             |
| Alternative phrases 85              | Sensory 37                    |
| Apposition 85-87                    | Situation 46-47               |
| Appositive phrases 85               | Stative 13                    |
| Aspect 10, 12, 14-15                | táka clause 36                |
| Aspectual clauses 48-49             | Time 34                       |
| Assertative phrase 81-82            | Cognitive phrase 82           |
| Asseverative phrase 83              | Completive aspect 12, 14-15   |
| Associative Noun 58, 60             | Compound plus radical 95      |
| Associative noun phrase 9, 58-59    | Compound plus root 95         |
| ?ásta-phrase 74                     | Compound radical 89, 96       |
| Attention clauses 31-32, 58         | Compounds 89, 93-95           |
| Auxiliary 10, 15-16                 | Conclusive phrase 80          |
|                                     | Concomitance clause 34-35     |
| Capability clause 48                | Condition 10                  |
| Causative noun phrase 61            | Conditional position 20-21    |
| Classifier roots 23,90              | Consequential phrase 83       |
| Classifiers 39-42                   | Contingency clause 35         |
| Clause 9-22                         | Contrary-to-fact clause 36-37 |
| Clauses                             | ,                             |
| Active 9, 12                        | Deictic endings 71            |
| Aspectual 48-49                     | Demonstration clause 47-48    |
| Attention 31-32, 58                 | Derivational suffixes 96-107  |
| Capability 48                       | Description clause 43-45      |
| Concomitance 34-35                  | Descriptive noun phrase 55-57 |
| Contingency 35                      | Determiner Phrase 70-71       |
| Contrary-to-fact 36-37              | Direct quotation 49-51        |
| Demonstration 47-48                 | Directionals 10, 16-17        |
| Description 43-45                   | Ditransitive 9                |
| k'án clause 36                      | Dubitative phrase 81          |
| Location 33-34                      | Daniative pittabe of          |
| máka clause 36-37                   | Emphatic phrase 81            |
| Manner 32-33                        | zmphanio phi abo or           |
| manner 32-33<br>náka clause 36      | First person 65               |
| naka ciause 50                      | First person 65               |

Formation of compound radicals 96 Formation of compounds 94-95

Goal 9

Imperative 11
Impersonal noun 54
Inclusive 65
Incompletive aspect 12, 14
Indicative mode 10-12
Indirect object 9
Injunctive mode 10-12
Interrogative stative stems 23
Intransitive 9
Intransitive root 89, 90
Intransitive verb stems 92
Intransitive-noun root 89, 91
Intransitive-transitive root 89, 91
Intransitive-transitive root 89, 91
Intransitive-transitive root 89, 91
Intransitivizing suffixes 97-100
Item 57

k'álal-phrases 74-75 k'an clause 36

Limitative phrase 80-81
Location clause 33-34
Locative constituent 10
Locative k'álal-phrase 74-75
Locative noun phrase 61-62
Locative position 19-20
Locative ti-phrase 73

máka clause 36-37
mantáuk 29
Manner clauses 32-33
Manner constituent 10
Manner position 18-19
Manner ti-phrase 73
mi-phrases 76-77
Modal phrase 79-83
Modals 79
Mode 10-12
Morphophonemes 111-116
Multiples 39-40

náka clause 36 Negation clause 28-31

29 Negative contrary-to-fact condition Neutral root 89 Nominal constituents 9 Nominal positions 17-18 Nominalizing affixes 103-107 Nonnuclear constituents 9 Non-class-changing affixes 107-109 Noun phrases 53, 55-63 Noun stems 93 Nouns 53-55 Nuclear constituents 9 Nucleus 10 Numeral clause 38-42 Numeral roots 23, 89 Numerals 38-39

Object 9
Obligatorily possessed nouns 54
Optionally possessed nouns 53-54

Passive 10-12
Passive clause 9
Past perfective phrase 80
Perfective 10, 12, 14
Perfective phrase 80
Permission clause 45-46
Phrases

Accompaniment noun 60-61, 86 Additive 85-87 Adjunctive 82-83 Alternative 85 Appositive 85 Assertative 81-82 Asseverative 83 Associative noun 9, 58-59 ?ásta-phrase 74 Causative noun 61 Cognitive 82 Conclusive 80 Consequential 83 Descriptive noun 55-57 Determiner 70-71 Dubitative 81 Emphatic 81 k'álal-phrases 74-75 Limitative 80-81

Locative k'álal-phrase 74-75

INDEX 119

| Locative noun 61-62                  | Root 89                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Locative ti-phrase 73                | Root classification 89-92               |
| Manner ti-phrase 73                  | Root plus compound 95                   |
| mi-phrases 76-77                     | Root plus radical compounds 94          |
| Modal 79-83                          | Root plus root compounds 94             |
| Noun 53, 55-63                       |   |
| Past perfective 80                   | Second person 11, 85-67                 |
| Perfective 80                        | Sensory clause 37                       |
| Possessed noun 57-58                 | Situation clause 46-47                  |
| Present continuative 79-80           | Speculative phrase 83                   |
| Quotative 82                         | Stative clause 13                       |
| Relator 73-77                        | Stative root 89-90                      |
| Repetitive 82                        | Stative stems 93                        |
| Speculative 83                       | Stative verb stems 92                   |
| Temporal k'álal-phrase 75            | Stative-noun root 89, 92                |
| Temporal noun 62-63                  | Stativizing suffixes 102-103            |
| Temporal ti-phrase 73-74             | Stem classification 92-94               |
| ti-phrases 73-74                     | Subject 9                               |
| Totality 58,60                       | Subjunctive 11                          |
| Verb 10                              | ·                                       |
| Plural 67-70                         | táka clause 36                          |
| Plural markers 10, 14                | Temporal k'álal-phrase 75               |
| Possessed noun phrase 57-58          | Temporal noun phrase 62-63              |
| Possessed Nouns as predicators 63    | Temporal ti-phrase 73-74                |
| Possessor 57                         | Third person 65-66                      |
| Predicate 9                          | ti-phrases 73-74                        |
| Present continuative phrase 79-80    | Time clauses 34                         |
| Pronouns 10, 14, 65-67               | Time consitiuent 10                     |
| Purpose-Cause 10                     | Time position 20                        |
| Purpose-Cause position 21-22         | Timeless aspect 11, 12, 14              |
| Furpose-Cause position 21-22         | Totality phrase 58, 60                  |
| Quantification clause 37-38          | Transitive 9                            |
| Question clause 23-28                | Transitive root 89-90                   |
| Questions for confirmation 23, 76-77 | Transitive verb stems 92                |
| Questions for Information 23         | Transitive-classifier root 89, 91-92    |
| Quotation clause 49-51               | Transitive-noun root 89, 92             |
| Quotative phrase 82                  | Transitivity 9                          |
| quotative piizabe oz                 | Transitivizing suffixes 100-102         |
| Radical 89, 94-95                    | 110000111111111111111111111111111111111 |
| Radical plus compound 95             | Unpossessable nouns 53-55               |
| Radical plus root compounds 94-95    | •                                       |
| Referential 10                       | Verb 10-14                              |
| Referential clause 13-14             | Verb stem 10, 12-14                     |
| Reflexive 10, 14                     | Verb phrase 10                          |
| Reflexive noun 55                    | Vocative 10, 22                         |
| Relator phrases 73-77                | Vocative noun 55                        |
| Repetitive phrase 82                 |   |
| Dhotomical assertion 24 25           | Word formation 89-109                   |

Rhetorical question 24-25

Word formation 89-109